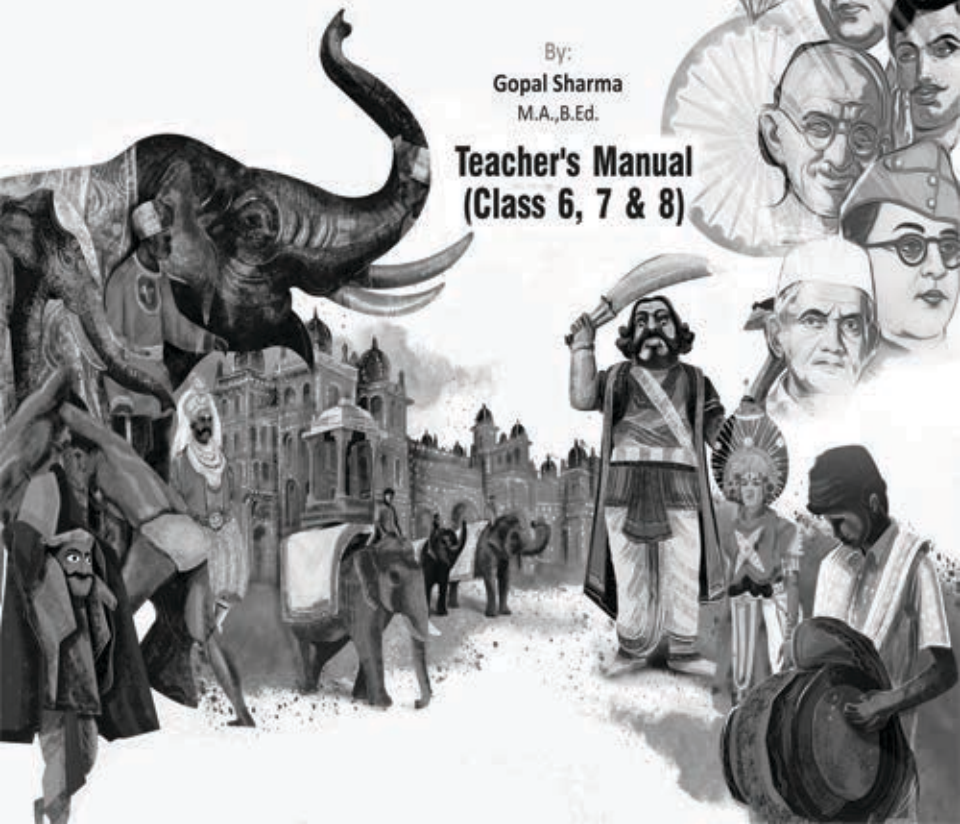


# SOCIAL STUDIES

By:  
Gopal Sharma  
M.A., B.Ed.

**Teacher's Manual  
(Class 6, 7 & 8)**



### Planet Earth in the Solar System

#### Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
- Comets have a shining tail behind them.
  - The moon appears to be the brightest star because it reflects the Sun's light which reaches the Earth in one and a quarter seconds.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the right answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (iii)                      3. (ii).

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
- Name the fifth planet. **Jupiter**
  - Which planet is almost identical to the Earth? **Venus**
  - Name the planet in the solar system without a satellite. **Mercury and Venus**
  - Name the stationary star in the Northern sky. **The Pole Star**

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
- Light travels at a speed of **3,00,000** kilometres per second.
  - The nearest star to the Sun is **Proxima Centauri**.
  - Uranus** and **Venus** rotates east to west.
  - The first satellite launched by India in 1975 was named as **Aryabhata**.

**E. State whether the following statements True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. True      2. False      3. False      4. True.

**F. Define the following :**

- Ans.**
- Asteroids** : They are very small planet-like bodies which revolve around the Sun between the orbits of Mars and Jupiter. They are believed to be the pieces of a bigger planet which exploded soon after its birth. The largest asteroid is the Ceres.
  - Meteors** : Meteors are small pieces of solid mass which move about in the sky, revolving around the Sun.

Sometimes they enter the Earth's atmosphere with great speed. They become heated by friction and start burning.

3. **Satellites**

The word satellite means attendant companion. A satellite moves round the planet in the same way as a planet moves round the Sun. In other words, while revolving round the planet, the satellites also revolve round the Sun. Our Earth has one satellite which we call Moon while Jupiter has 63 satellites. Satellites, like the planets, have no light or heat of their own. They reflect the light of the Sun. Planets revolve round the Sun, while the satellites revolve round the planets.

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. It is wonderful to watch the sky after sunset and wonder about these heavenly bodies. They are called heavenly bodies because we associate them with heaven. The astronomers call the objects seen in the sky as celestial bodies.
2. A constellation is a group of stars forming a certain shape. One such constellation is a group of seven stars which is called the Saptarishi. The Saptarishi forms a part of the constellation of the Big Bear, also known as Ursa Major in Latin.
3. Stars are the only self-luminous bodies. They have their own heat and light. Stars are made of hot, burning gases. They are actually very big in size but being very far away from us, they look small and tiny like just dots in the sky. Our Sun is also a star. It appears larger and brighter, as compared to other stars, because it is much nearer to the Earth.

4. **Planets**

The word 'planet' is derived from the Greek word 'Planetai' meaning 'wanderer'. There are eight planets in our solar system. These planets in order of their distances from the Sun are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. The planets do not have their own light. They only reflect light received from the Sun. All the planets are spherical in shape.

## H. Long Answer Questions :

### Ans. 1. **The Solar System (Family of the Sun)**

The Sun and the eight planets that revolve round the Sun are members of the solar system. These eight planets are Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune. Besides the Sun and the planets, there are some smaller celestial bodies as well in the solar system. These small bodies are called satellites. The satellites revolve round the planets in the same way as the planets revolve round the Sun. Our Earth has one satellite which we call the 'moon'.

2. In fact our earth is a unique planet in the whole solar system. It is considered so because of the following reasons.

The distance of the Earth from the Sun results in such a climate which is best suited for the development of man and other forms of life on the Earth.

On this planet (i.e., Earth) water occurs in vast quantities which makes the possible on the Earth, as water is quite essential for all forms of life.

Its atmosphere is rich in oxygen that makes life possible on this planet.

Its atmosphere acts as a large cover to protect its surface from extreme cold and extreme heat. The ozone layer protects us from harmful sun rays.

3. We can distinguish between a star and a planet through the following informations :

A star is a huge ball of fire and has its own light while a planet does not have its own light.

A star gives light to the planet while the planet receives the same from the star. In other words, stars act as donors while the planets act as receivers.

A star is stationary like the Sun while a planet, like the Earth, is always moving or wandering.

Stars are numerous in number while planets are only eight in number in our solar system.

4. **India's Space Programme**

India's space programme began in 1975. Since the launch of its first satellite Aryabhata in 1975 followed by two other satellites named Bhaskar-I and Bhaskar-II, India has

achieved remarkable progress in the field of space research and technology. So far, a large number of satellites have been launched successfully from Sri Harikota (Andhra Pradesh). Prominent among these include satellite of Rohini, SROSS, INSAT and IRS series.

In April 2008 ISRO achieved the rare distinction of launching 10 satellites in one go. India has now emerged as a major player in satellite launch business. ISRO not only launches its own indigenously built satellites but also make arrangements for putting into the Earth's orbit satellites of other countries.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

2

Globe : Latitudes and Longitudes

### Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.
1. Antarctic Circle falls on the  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ S of the equator.
  2. The Earth take 24 hours to rotate on its own axis.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.
1. (iii)
  2. (iv)
  3. (ii)
  4. (i).

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.
1. Globe.
  2. Equator.
  3. Hemisphere means half globe.
  4. Prime Meridian.
  5. Grid.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.
1. **Torrid zone** is also known as Tropical Zone.
  2. **Arctic Circle** lies  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$ N of the Equator.
  3. Tropic of Cancer is located at  $23\frac{1}{2}$  degrees.
  4. Distance between longitude decreases towards **poles**.
  5. The **Equator** cuts the globe into **two** equal halves.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.
1. True
  2. False
  3. True
  4. True
  5. True
  6. True.

**F. Differentiate between the following :**

**Ans.**

1. **Latitude :** The lines of latitudes are the imaginary circles running round the Earth parallel to the Equator.

**Longitude :** Lines joining the North Pole and the South Pole are called the lines of longitude.

2. **Torrid Zone :** It lies between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn and is also known as Tropical Zone. It is the hottest zone of the world.

**Frigid Zone :** There two zone lie between  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}$  and  $90^{\circ}$  north and south of the equator. There are the coldest zone of the world.

3. **Grid :** The longitudes and latitudes intersect each other at right angles forming a grid.

**Great Circle :** The Equator is called the Great Circle. It cuts the globe into two equal halves known as hemispheres.

**G. Define the following :**

**Ans.**

1. **Latitudes :** The lines of latitudes are the imaginary circles running round the Earth parallel to the Equator.

2. **Longitudes :** Lines joining the North Pole and the South Pole are called the lines of longitudes.

3. **Equator :** The Equator drawn in the middle of the globe, is exactly between North Pole and South Pole. The equator cuts the globe into two equal halves.

4. **GMT :** The Earth and the Sun are most commonly used to measure time. The rotation of the Earth on its axis gives us the measure of the day. While the revolution of the Earth around the Sun gives us the measure of a year. The Earth rotates from west to east through  $360^{\circ}$  in about 24 hours. In other words, the Sun covers  $15^{\circ}$  of longitudes in 1 hour and 4 minutes to pass over each degree of longitude. Thus, the places east of a given longitude will have the sunrise first. Take the case of Mumbai ( $72^{\circ}54' E$ ) and Kolkata ( $88^{\circ}24' E$ ). Based on their given longitudes we can say that Kolkata lies to the east of Mumbai and it will also experience sunrise first.

Based on this calculation, there is a difference of  $15^{\circ}30'$  longitudes between Kolkata and Mumbai ( $88^{\circ}24' - 72^{\circ}54'$ ). Multiplying it by 4 minutes, the time difference of each longitude ( $4 \times 15^{\circ}30'$ ) = 62 minutes. This means that the Sun

will rise 62 minutes later at Mumbai compared to Kolkata. From time immemorial, the overhead Sun in the sky provided the easiest method of measuring the time. It has been accepted by all countries of the world to refer to the local time of 0° longitude or the Prime Meridian as the Greenwich Mean Time or G.M.T. G.M.T. is sometimes referred to as World Time.

## **H. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Globes are man-made models of the Earth. They are small but of the same shape as the Earth. It shows the exact shape of the Earth's directions, relative sizes and shapes of the oceans, continents, islands and seas. It also shows the correct location of different places and features in relation to one another.

Globes are useful in understanding how days and nights are caused and how we have different seasons over the year.

Globes may be of different sizes and types. Big globes are expensive and awkward to carry around. But now, small pocket globes and globe like balloons, which can be inflated are available. They can be folded and carried easily.

- 2.1 The important parallels are Equator, Tropic of Cancer, Tropic of Capricorn, Arctic Circle and Antarctic Circle.
3. The Equator drawn in the middle of the globe, is exactly between North Pole and South Pole. The equator cuts the globe into two equal halves known as hemispheres ('hemi' means half and 'sphere' means globe). The northern half is known as Northern Hemisphere and the southern half as Southern Hemispheres.

4. **Torrid Zone**

It lies between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn and is also known as Tropical Zone (Torrid Zone). It is the hottest zone of the world. At any point in this zone, the Sun is vertically overhead twice a year. Most of the southern half of India, lies in this zone.

5. Lines joining the North Pole and the South Pole are called the lines of longitude. Longitude is also called 'meridian' which means 'mid-day'. It is so called because all places on any line of meridian have their noon at the same time. Thus, a meridian can also be defined as a line joining places which

have their noon at the same time. The meridian which passes through Greenwich near London (Old British Royal Observatory) is taken as the starting point. Its meridian is measured  $0^\circ$  and is known as Prime Meridian.

6. The Frigid Zone lie beyond the Arctic Circle in the Northern Hemisphere and Antarctic Circle in the Southern Hemisphere. As the angle of the sun rays goes on decreasing towards the Poles, the Sun never rises much above the horizon in the there two zones. As the name indicates, there are cold regions and receive minimum solar energy.
7. **Local Time**  
The local time of a place is 12 noon when the midday Sun is right above it. All places on the same meridian have noon at the same time if the watches are set according to the time of the overhead Sun at a particular meridian.

## **I. Long Answer Questions :**

### **Ans. 1. Heat Zones of the Earth**

On the basis of the heat received, the Earth is divided into the following :

#### **(i) Torrid Zone**

It lies between the Tropic of Cancer and Tropic of Capricorn and is also known as Tropical Zone (Torrid Zone). It is the hottest zone of the world. At any point in this zone, the Sun is vertically overhead twice a year. Most of the southern half of India, lies in this zone.

#### **(ii) Temperate Zones**

These are two zones, one in the each hemisphere, lying between  $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  and  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  latitudes. The northern zone lies between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle. The southern temperate zone likewise lies between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic Circle. Because of moderate temperature prevailing in these zones, they are termed as temperate zones. The Sun is never overhead in these zones.

#### **(iii) Frigid Zones**

These two zones lies between  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$  north and south of the equator. They lie beyond the Arctic Circle in the Northern Hemisphere and Antarctic Circle in the Southern Hemisphere. As the angle of the sun rays goes on decreasing towards the Poles, the Sun never rises much above the



horizon in these two zones. As the name indicates, these are cold regions and receive minimum solar energy. The midnight Sun phenomenon also happens in this zone.

2. The important parallels are the following :

**Tropic of Cancer** : It is the parallel of  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{N}$  in the Northern Hemisphere. It passes through the middle of our country.

**Tropic of Capricorn** : It lies the parallel of  $23\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{S}$  in the Southern Hemisphere.

**Arctic Circle** : It is  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{N}$  of the equator.

**Antarctic Circle** : It lies  $66\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{S}$  of the equator.

3. The lines of longitude and latitude form a network on the globe. The longitudes and latitudes intersect each other at right angle forming a grid. Using the grid we can locate any place on Earth by referring to the point where latitudes and longitudes intersect. The parallels help us to locate a place north or south of the equator, while the Meridians do the same east or west of the Prime Meridian. The point of intersection of these lines gives the precise location of a place. For example, Haridwar in Uttarakhand lies at the point of intersection of  $30^{\circ}\text{N}$  and  $78^{\circ}\text{E}$  (longitude and latitude respectively).
4. In India, there is a difference of about 30 degrees between the westernmost and easternmost longitudes. To avoid confusion, the local time of  $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{E}$  longitude is selected as the standard time for the entire country. Thus  $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ}\text{E}$  is accepted as the Standard Meridian for India. It shows time five and half hours ahead of Greenwich Time ( $82\frac{1}{2}^{\circ} \times 4$  minutes = 330 minutes or  $5\frac{1}{2}$  hours). Thus, when it is noon at Greenwich in England, it would be 5.30 p.m. in India. As the Earth rotates from west to east, places in the east see the Sun first while places in the west see the Sun later.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. All the meridians meet at the Poles.  
2. Days and nights are caused due to the rotation of the Earth on its axis.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :****Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (iii)                      3. (iv)                      4. (iii).

**C. Answer in the one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. Spring.                      2. June.                      3. December.  
4. Rotation and Revolution.  
5. The Position when the Earth happens to be closest to the sun.  
6. When the Earth happen to be farthest to the sun.  
7. Leap year.                      8. Revolution.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. 23rd September is known as **Autumnal Equinox**.  
2. There are **24** hours in a day.  
3. The Earth spinning around its axis is called **it rotation**.  
4. Leap day is added in the month of **February**.  
5. The direction of Earth is from **West** to **East**.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. False                      2. False                      3. True  
4. False                      5. True                      6. True.

**F. Match the following :**

- Ans.** 1. 23rd September → i. Spring Equinox  
2. 22nd December → ii. Summer Solstice  
3. March 21st → iii. Winter Solstice  
4. Day and Night → iv. Autumnal Equinox  
5. June 21 → v. 24 hours

**G. Define the following :**

- Ans.** 1. **Rotation :** The spinning of the Earth around its axis is called rotation.  
2. **Revolution :** The movement of the Earth around the Sun in a fixed elliptical orbit is called revolution.  
3. **Aphelion :** The position when the Earth happens to be

farthest to the Sun, is called Aphelion.

4. **Leap year :** The Earth completes one revolution in 365 days and 6 hours. While 365 days make one complete year,  $6 \times 4 = 24$  hours are added to a year after every 4 years to make one complete day. It is added to the month of February every 4 year which has 366 days. This year is called leap year.

**H. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The days and nights are caused due to the rotation of the Earth. Rotation divides the Earth into a lit up half and a dark half. Hence, the part of the Earth directly facing the Sun is lit by it and this is day while on the opposite side of the Earth these is darkness and is called night.

The rotation of the Earth results in heat and light and darkness as well. This change from day to night causes temperature variations on the Earth. There is increase in temperature during day and a decrease in temperature at night.

2. The lengths of day and night very due to the revolutions.
3. Earth completes one revolution in 365 days and 6 hours. While 365 days make one complete year,  $6 \times 4 = 24$  hours are added to a year after every 4 years to make one complete day. It is added to the month of February every 4 years which has 366 days. This year is called leap year.
4. A year is usually divided into four seasons spring, summer, autumn and winter. Seasons change when there is change in the position of the Earth with reference to the Sun. These changes are due to :
1. the revolution of the Earth, and
  2. the inclination of the Earth's axis in a fixed direction.
5. Moving on its orbit the Earth reaches the position on 21st of March. On this day the Sun remains equidistant from the North Pole and the South Pole. Hence the Sun's rays fall vertically on the Equator. The days and nights become equal all over the world. This period in the Northern Hemisphere is Spring Equinox and in the Southern Hemisphere, Autumnal Equinox.
- This is how the Earth goes on moving on its orbit round the year and how seasonal changes take place.
6. The Earth completes one revolution in 365 days and 6 hours.

While 365 days make one complete year,  $6 \times 4 = 24$  hours are added to a year after every 4 years to make one complete day. It is added to the month of February every 4 year which has 366 days. This year is called leap year.

7. The axis of the Earth, which is an imaginary line joining the North and South poles, is not vertical. It is tilted and makes an angle of  $66\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  with the plane of the Earth's orbit. This is known as the inclination of the Earth's axis. The inclination remains always in the same directions.

### **I. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. On 21st of June the Sun's rays fall vertically on the Tropic of Cancer ( $23\frac{1}{2}^\circ\text{N}$ ) as the North's Pole remains inclined towards the Sun and South Pole is away from it. A larger portion of the Northern Hemisphere gets light (and Heat) from the Sun. Thus, it is summer for places north of the Equator. The longest day and shortest night at these places occur on June 21. In the southern Hemisphere, all these conditions are reversed. It is winter season there. The nights are longer than the days.

At this time, the North Pole and in the whole area North of Arctic Circle, there is a complete 24 hours period of continuous daylight. In summer, this region is popularly known as the 'Land of Midnight Sun'. Thus during this period, daylight goes on increasing from 12 hours at the Equator to 24 hours at the North Pole. This time when Sun reaches its maximum distance from the Equator (21st June), is known as Summer Solstice.

2. **Winter Solstice :** From Autumnal Equinox the Earth gradually moves and it reaches the position of winter solstice on 22nd December. On 22nd December the Sunshine vertically over the tropic of Capricorn. It is known as Winter Solstice in Northern Hemisphere. (It is because of this that when it is summer in southern Hemisphere there is winter in Northern Hemisphere). On 22nd December, Sun shines vertically over the Tropic of Capricorn.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The Earth's surface on a reduced size or scale. Large distance of world is represented by a small distance on paper. This ratio between actual distance of Earth and the distance on map is called scale.
  2. A grid system is made by the intersection between the horizontal and vertical lines.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (i)                                  2. (ii)                                  3. (iii)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The Greeks.
  2. The maps help to understand the location of the things.
  3. Atlas.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. A map is the **graphical** representation on a **flat** surface.
  2. Maps are **portable** and easy to handle.
  3. The **legend** or **key** of a map explains the symbols used in it.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. **Map** : A map is a graphical representation of the Earth's surface or a part of it on a flat surface.
  2. Maps provide us a lot of information related to political, physical, minerals, vegetation, wildlife, climate and industries.
  3. **Thematic Maps** : They provide us specific information, such as representing climatic condition, distribution of minerals, crops, industries, population, vegetation, transportation etc.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. **Comparison Between Map and Globe**
    - (i) Map is two-dimensional while the globe is three-dimensional.
    - (ii) Map can represent small areas, countries, continents as well which the globe cannot.
    - (iii) Map can easily be transported which serves many

purposes. For example, atlas which is a bound collection of maps, gives divers information. But globe is not always portable and gives limited information.

## 2. **Advantages of the Maps**

Maps are important and useful due to certain advantages :

- Maps can be drawn for smaller as well as larger areas.
- They can portable and easy to handle which serve many purposes.
- Maps provide us a lot of information. A variety of information can be represented on the following maps :
- Political and Physical Minerals
- Vegetation and Wildlife Climate Industries

A map as a guide for the tourists.

## 3. Maps are of many types.

The most commonly used maps are :

### (i) **Political Maps**

Political maps divide an area into administrative units such as countries, states, districts, villages, cities or towns with the help of lines to show borders or boundaries.

### (ii) **Physical Maps**

These maps show geographical features such as mountains, hills, plateaus, plains and water bodies such as rivers, lakes, seas. Climatic conditions can also be represented on such maps.

### (iii) **Thematic Maps**

They provide us specific information, such as representing climatic conditions, distribution of minerals, crops, industries, population, vegetation, transportation etc. They are also called distribution maps. Such maps can be seen in an Atlas.

### (iv) **Topographic Maps or Survey Maps**

Topographical maps show great details of the natural features of a small area including rivers, lakes, mountains, etc., along with man-made areas like parks, wells, cities and towns.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. The large land masses on the Earth are called continents.  
2. Moving air is called wind.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (iii)                                      2. (ii)                                      3. (ii).

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. Asia.                                      2. Litho in Greek means 'rock'.  
3. Antarctica.                                      4. Mariana Trench is about 11,022 metres deep.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The continent around the South Pole is **Antartica**.  
2. The smallest continent is **Australia**.  
3. **North America** is the third largest continent on the Earth.  
4. The densest and closest layer of atmosphere to the Earth is **Troposphere**.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. False      2. False      3. True      4. True.

**F. Define the following :**

- Ans.** 1. **Relief** : The surface of the Earth is neither uniform nor regular everywhere. At some places, it is elevated while at others it is level. This variation is called relief.  
2. **Ocean Currents** : The regular movement of water from one part of the ocean to another are called ocean current.  
3. **Tides** : The regular and alternate rise and fall of sea water due to the gravitational pull of moon and sun are called tides.  
4. **Waves** : The rising and falling of the surface water caused by pushing actions of the winds, it is called a wave.

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. **Lithosphere**  
'Litho' in Greek means 'rock' and the word Lithosphere refers to solid rock and soil. The soil outer crust of the Earth, composed of rocks and mineral, is called the lithosphere. It includes all types of land masses found on the surface of the

Earth. It covers about 29 per cent of the Earth's total surface area.

2. Our Earth is the only known planet so far which has life. Life exists on the Earth because all the necessary conditions which support life are present on the Earth. It has land, air and water. These three realms of the Earth are called Lithosphere, Hydrosphere and Atmosphere.
3. Air has weight and exerts pressure. The pressure of the air depends on the temperature. As the temperature of the air varies from place to place and also from time to time, so does the pressure of air. A change in air pressure causes air to move. Moving air is called wind.
4. **Composition of Atmosphere**  
Air is a mixture of about 12 gases, water vapour, dust particles and smoke. Its composition is fairly constant in the lower layers. The atmosphere mainly contains nitrogen (about 78 per cent) and oxygen (about 21%). Other gases include argon, carbon dioxide, ozone, hydrogen, and helium (about 1%). The atmosphere, particularly in the lower layers, contains water vapour and dust particles.
5. The Earth has the plenty of water on its surface and also below the surface as underground water so it is called 'Watery planet'.

## H. Long Answer Questions :

### Ans. 1. Landforms

The surface of the Earth is neither uniform nor regular everywhere. At some places, it is elevated while at others it is level. This variation is called relief. The relief features on the Earth's surface are broadly grouped into mountains, plateaus and plains. These are called the major landforms.

- (i) **Mountains** : A mountain is a high landmass with sharply sloping surfaces. It is considerably higher than the surrounding areas. Several mountains may merge together to form a chain or a mountain range, like the Himalayan ranges in the north of India.

The height and shape of a mountain varies greatly according to its age. Himalayas are the young mountains, very high and with many conical peaks. While the Aravallis, being old mountains, are low and have rounded peaks.



(ii) **Plateaus** : A plateau is a broad and more or less level stretch of upland which is more or less flat at the top with steep sides. It is also known as tableland. A plateau rises abruptly from the surrounding area. Therefore, it has steep slopes. Some plateaus are very large and extend over thousands of square kilometres, like the Deccan Plateau of India.

Almost every continent has large plateaus. The peninsular plateau of India is a large plateau. The plateau of Tibet in Asia, surrounded by mountain ranges, is the highest plateau in the world. Some of the old plateaus are rich in mineral resources.

(iii) **Plains** : A relatively flat and low-lying vast expanse of land is called a plain. They are also called lowlands. The general slope of the land is gradual, but never abrupt.

Some plains are gently sloping or may even be hilly. Most of them have been formed by rivers, like the Northern Plains of India. While flowing down the steep mountain slopes, rivers carry stones, sand and silt with them. When the rivers slow down, they deposit this material in the valleys.

## 2. **Hydrosphere**

All the water bodies on the Earth's surface, namely oceans, seas, lakes, rivers, together with snow and ice are collectively called the hydrosphere. Water is also found below the surface of the Earth as underground water. Of all the planets, it is only the Earth which has hydrosphere. That is why the Earth is known as the Watery planet because it is the only planet of the solar system which contains a huge quantity of water, about 71% of the total area of the globe.

There are four major oceans. In the decreasing order of size, they are : The Pacific Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Indian Ocean and the Arctic Ocean. About 97 per cent of the total water on the surface of the Earth is in oceans and less than one per cent is fresh water.

## 3. **Importance of the Atmosphere**

The atmosphere surrounding the Earth helps us in many ways.

- Atmosphere provide oxygen-a life giving gas, to all the living beings.
- It also provide carbon dioxide gas to the plant for the

- photosynthesis process to take place.
- It gives us protection from the harmful ultraviolet rays of the sun.
- It helps to maintain a fairly even temperature by protecting us from the cold of outer space at night, and by softening the glare of the Sun during day.
- Air has weight and exerts pressure. The pressure of the air depends on the temperature. As the temperature of the air varies from place to place and also from time to time, so does the pressure of air. A change in air pressure causes air to move. Moving air is called wind.
- The change of weather from place to place and from season to season is also due to the presence of atmosphere.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Major Relief Features of the Earth

### Exercise

#### **A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The process of depositing of sediment is known as deposition.
  2. From the coast towards the open sea, there is a stretch of shallow sea. The depth of sea water goes on increasing away from the coast under the sea vary gradually. This part of the ocean is called continental shelf.

#### **B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (iii)                      3. (iii)                      4. (iv)

#### **C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The Himalayas are young fold mountains.
  2. The Aravallis.
  3. The upward folds of mountains are called anticlines.
  4. The wearing away of Earth's surface is called erosion.
  5. The Himalayas, the Alps, the Rockies.
  6. Mountains are storehouse of snow, ice and water.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. A block of land subsided between the faults, from a **Rift valley**.
  2. Mt. Vesuvius in Italy is an example of **Volcanic Mountain**.
  3. Mt. Mauna Kea is located in **Hawaii**.
  4. Most of the landforms in **Africa** are plateaus or tablelands.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. True      2. True      3. False      4. False.

**F. Define the following :**

- Ans.**
1. **Mountains :** A mountain is defined as any natural elevation of the Earth's surface with a peak or summit, which is small in proportion to its base.
  2. **Trench :** There are vast plateaus and deep valleys floor. At places, there are very deep gaps called trenches.
  3. **Open Trench :** There are vast plateaus and deep valleys between mountain ranges on the ocean floor. At places, there are very deep gaps called trenches in sea bed. Ocean trenches are believed to formed due to faulting on the ocean floor.
  4. **Alluvial Plains :** Most plains are formed by the accumulation of fine soil brought down by rivers after wearing down the highlands. This fine soil is called alluvium. Therefore such plains are called Alluvial Plains.

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The surface of the Earth is not the same everywhere. There is a lot of differences in elevation and slope of various landforms, such as mountains, plateaus, plains, etc.
  2. The gradual uplifting of folds to form the fold mountain take place in different stages. Almost all the major mountains under this category were formed during the recent period of geological history. That is why they are known young fold mountains.
  3. Plateaus are uplifted land masses with steep sides and relatively flat surface. They may be uplifted due to Earth movement or formed by cooling and solidification of material from volcanic eruptions. Subsequently, the material oozed slowly out of cracks in the Earth. The Deccan Plateau in the India, the West Australian Plateau and

the Plateau of Brazil are very old. The Plateau of Tibet is the highest Plateau in the world. It is also called the 'Roof of the World'.

4. Mt. Vesuvius in Italy, Mt. Fujiyama in Japan and Mt. Mauna Pea in Hawaii are the examples of volcanic mountains.
5. A flat low lying surface with the altitude of more than 300 above mean sea level is called a plain. Most plains are formed by the accumulation of fine soil brought down by rivers after wearing down the highlands. This fine soil is called alluvium. Therefore, such plains are called Alluvial Plains. They are very fertile. The Mississippi Basin in North America, the Nile Basin in Egypt, Ganga Plains in India and Yangtze Kiang Basin in China have very fertile soil. So they are quite suitable for agriculture. The Great plains of India is an example of it.

#### **H. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. A mountain is defined as any natural elevation of the Earth's surface with a peak or summit, which is small in proportion to its base. On the basis of their origin mountains are generally classified into four types. These are : 1. Fold 2. Block 3. Volcanic 4. Residual.

##### **(i) Fold Mountains**

Fold mountains are formed by the internal processes of the Earth. These mountains are formed due to the push of tectonic forces in the lithospheric plates. This push or compression causes the rock layers to fold. Under the impact of the forces of compression the horizontal rock strata crumbles into a series of upward folds and downward folds. The upward folds are called Anticlines and downward folds are called Synclines.

The gradual uplifting of folds to form the fold mountains take place in different stages. Almost all the major mountains under this category were formed during the recent period of geological history. That is why they are known young fold mountains. The Himalayas, the Alps, the Rockies, the Andes are the young fold mountains. On the other hand the old fold mountains have been denuded and worn out by the external forces of denudation. The Urals, the Appalachians, the Aravallis are some of the old

mountains.

**(ii) Block Mountains**

These are formed by the horizontal forces of compression i.e., faulting or cracking in the Earth followed by uplift or sinking along the faults. The uplifted block forms a horst or a block mountain. If a block of land subsides between the faults, it forms a Trench called a Rift Valley or Graben. Satpura and Vindhya in India are the Block mountains while the Narmada Valley and Tapi Valley are the Rift valleys. The Black Forest Mountains and the Vosages are best examples of block mountains. River Rhine flows in a rift valley between these two block mountains.

**(iii) Volcanic Mountains**

Whenever there is an eruption of volcano, the lava comes out and spreads around the volcanic pipe. With the passage of time this lava solidifies and gives rise to a cone shaped mountain called Volcanic Mountain. Mt. Vesuvius in Italy, Mt. Fujiyama in Japan and Mt. Mauna Kea in Hawaii are the examples of volcanic mountains.

**(iv) Residual Mountains**

Over millions of years, such high mountains got eroded by wind, rain, glaciers and running water. Eventually, they became old, worn out highlands like the Aravalli range in India, Appalachians in North America and Urals in Europe. Such old remains of mountains are called residual mountains.

Mountains are storehouse of snow, ice and water. Many rivers flow here from glaciers. They have fertile terraces and valleys suited to the cultivation of crops and fruit trees. They are also rich in wildlife and forests. People use mountainous areas for tourism and adventure sports.

**2. Sub-Marine Relief**

The Ocean basins have the counterparts of almost all the major landforms such as mountains, ridges, Plateaus, plains, caryons etc. Some of the relief features of the oceans (sub-marine reliefs) are given below through the ocean profile :

**Sea Mount**

A single mountain on the ocean floor is called a sea mount. It

may rise from the ocean floor above the level of sea water and become an island. In the island of Hawaii, Mt. Mauna Kea is actually the top part of a sub-marine mountain which is even higher than Mt. Everest on the land.

### **Ocean Trench**

There are vast Plateaus and deep valleys between mountain ranges on the ocean floor. At places, there are very deep gaps called trenches in the sea bed. Ocean trenches are believed to be formed due to faulting on the ocean floor. These trenches are formed very deep on the ocean floor. The deepest trench is the Mariana Trench about 11022 metres deep in the Pacific Ocean. It is located near the Philippines. Trenches are often known as Ocean deeps.

### **Continental Shelf**

It is generally rich in petroleum and often provides an excellent area for fishing because the depth of water is shallow.

### **Continental Slope**

From the coast towards the open sea, there is a stretch of shallow sea. The depth of sea water goes on increasing away from the coast under the sea very gradually. This part of the ocean is called continental shelf.

Beyond the continental shelf there is an abrupt or steep slope under the sea till the floor of the ocean. This part of the ocean is called Continental Slope.

A variety of landforms exist in the world. They keep transforming with time. They are further carved and form different minor relief features. Mountains, plateaus, plains and oceans support different activities as the shape of landforms differ.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

7

## India—Physical Divisions and Climate

### Exercise

#### **A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. Monsoon is the life time of our country because the agriculture of our country totally depends on monsoon rain.

- Dry and hot winds blow in the afternoons. These winds are locally known as loo.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (ii)    2. (ii)    3. (iv)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. Coromandel.    2. The Himalaya range.  
3. Anai Mudi.    4. The Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. India is a union of **28** states and **7** union territories.  
2. The average altitude of **Himadri** is 6000 m.  
3. The height of Mt K2 is **8611** m.  
4. The **Ganga Basin** forms 1/4 of the total area of India.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. India is bound by Tibet, China and Afghanistan in the north, Myanmar in the east and Sri Lanka in the south. Sri Lanka is separated from India by a narrow stretch of water, the Palk Strait.
- From north to south the Himalayas consist of three parallel ranges.
  - (i) **The Greater Himalayas or the Inner Himalayas :** These are the Highest Range of the Himalayan System. It is largely snow covered, that is why it is often referred to as Himadri. Its average altitude is 6000 m. Almost all the important mountain peaks are located in this range. This is the northern-most range of the Himalayas.
  - (ii) **The Lesser Himalayas or the Middle Himalayas :** They lie to the south of the Inner Himalayas. Its average altitude varies between 3000 m to 4500 m. This part of the Himalayas have some beautiful valleys like the Kashmir Valley and the Kathmandu Valley. It also has some beautiful health resorts such as Dalhousie, Shimla, Mussoorie, Nainital, Darjeeling, etc.
  - (iii) **The Outer Himalayas :** These are also known as the Shiwalik. It is the southernmost range. Its height varies from 900 to 1200 m. These ranges are narrow and discontinuous. They are well developed only on the Western Himalayas.
  3. India is a union of twenty-eight states and seven union territories including the National Capital Territory of Delhi.

India is the seventh largest country in the world.

4. The Himalayan wall in the North and the prevailing monsoons exert strong influence to bring about a sort of uniformity in the Indian climate. The climate that India generally has is known as the Monsoon climate.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

**1. (i) The Great Plains of the North**

The Northern Plains lie to the south of the Himalayas. They are extensive, low and flat. They are formed by the deposition of alluvium brought down and deposited by the rivers from the Himalayas and the Tibetan Plateau. These plains are mainly developed by Rivers Indus, Ganga, Brahmaputra and their tributaries. Three main river basins can be identified in the Northern Plains. They are the Indus basin, the Ganga basin and the Brahmaputra basin.

- (b) The Indus Basin is mainly located in the states of Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh and Punjab. This basin is drained by the river Indus and its tributaries. Indus originates beyond the Himalayas and drains into the Arabian Sea. Its tributaries are the Jhelum, Chenab, Ravi, Beas and Satluj. The bulk part of this basin lies in Pakistan.
- (c) The Ganga Basin form 1/4 of the total area of India. Many large streams contribute their waters to Ganga and Yamuna which join at Allahabad. The Ganga basin is very fertile, hence a variety of crops are cultivated here. The river water is utilised for navigation by boats. Water is also used for agriculture through a dense network of canals. Many old trading towns and big cities are located on the banks of rivers in the Ganga Basin. For instance, Kolkata is located on the banks of river Hooghly which is a distributary of Ganga. As the land in the Ganga Basin is flat, there is an excellent network of roads and railways in the Northern Plains. Agrobased and many other industries also flourish in the Ganga basin. For all these reasons, this river basin is densely populated.
- (d) The Brahmaputra Basin drains the eastern part of the northern plains. It flows through Assam. Tista is an important in this area, the river carries a very large volume of water. Due to the presence of a lot of fertile silt in the river



valley, the area is very good for growing rice and jute.

The Ganga-Brahmaputra basin lie in the India for the most part. The Ganga-Brahmaputra Delta is known as the 'Sundarbans'. This is the world's largest and fastest growing delta.

The fine and deep alluvium deposited by the rivers in the great northern plains make these plain one of the most Fertile Plains in the world.

**(ii) The Great Plateau of Peninsular India**

The Great Indian Plateau lies to the south of the Northern Plains of India. It is the oldest structure of the Indian subcontinent and is made up of hard igneous and metamorphic rocks. The Narmada river divides this plateau into two parts the Central Highlands in the north and the Deccan Plateau in the south.

**(a) Central Highlands :** To the north of Vindhya ranges lies the northern part of the plateau. It is known as the central highlands but is not very high. It mainly consists of Malwa Plateau, Bundelkhand Plateau, Baghelkhand Plateau and Chota Nagpur Plateau. The Aravalli range forms the north-west boundary of this part of the plateau and further west of Aravalli range lies the Great Indian Desert. To the north of this region lies the Satluj-Ganga Plain.

**(b) Deccan Plateau :** From the Vindhya mountain to the southern tip of India lies the other part of the Plateau, known as the Deccan Plateau which is Triangular in shape. The northern part of it is marked by Vindhyan Range and its eastern extensions of Mahadev Hills, Kaimur Hills and Maikal Range. The North-West part of Deccan Plateau is made up of igneous rocks as a result of the lava flow on this region in the geological past. Due to weathering these rocks yielded rich soils called black soils, which are highly suitable for cultivation of cotton.

**2. The Island Groups**

In addition to the mainland, India has two sets of islands the Andaman and Nicobar islands and the Lakshadweep islands.

**(a) Andaman and Nicobar Islands :** These islands lie in the Bay of Bengal. They are 233 in number. The northern cluster

of islands are known as the Andaman Islands. They are 214 in number. The southern cluster of islands are known as the Nicobar Islands. They are 19 in number. Many of these islands are small and uninhabited. They are located on the submerged hilly range.

- (b) **Lakshadweep Islands** : They lie in the Arabian Sea about 300 kilometres away from the Kerala coast. They are horse shoe shaped coral islands. The islands are 27 in number and about 17 of them are uninhabited. They are smaller in number and size as compared to the Nicobar islands.

**3. The Coastal Plains**

The Deccan Plateau is bounded by a narrow coastal plain in the west along the Arabian sea and in the east along the Bay of Bengal. The western coastal plain extends from Gujarat to Kerala. The northern part of this plain is called Konkan while its southern part is called Malabar. In the Malabar region along the Kerala coast, there are many Lagoons often called the Backwaters.

The Eastern coastal plains lies east of the Eastern Ghats along the Bay of Bengal. This is a Broad Plain. The rivers like Mahanadi, Godavari, Krishna and Kaveri pass through these plains and form deltas along the Bay of Bengal coast. The southern part of this plain is called Coromandel.

4. The distribution of rainfall in India is highly uneven. The amount of rainfall varies not only from season to season, but also from place to place. Most of it comes within four months (June to September) from the southwest monsoons. There are a few areas like the Western Coast and North-East India which receive heavy rainfall. Here the annual amount of rainfall is over 300 cm.

West-North Rajasthan, parts of Punjab, Haryana and Gujarat, interior parts of the Deccan Plateau and the area around Leh receive a low amount of rainfall. Here the annual rainfall is less than 50 cm. All other parts of India receive a moderate amount of rainfall. The North-West Himalayan region receives some snowfall during winter.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :****Ans.**

- The Tidal Forests are also called the mangrove forests. There are found in those areas which are flooded by the high tides of seas. Mainly these forests are found along the deltas of the rivers, especially the deltas of the Ganga, Mahanadi, Godavari and Krishna rivers.
- A zoo is a place where wild animals and birds from different parts of the world are kept and brought up. On the other hand, a national park is a reserved area meant for preserving natural vegetation, natural beauty and wildlife.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.**

- 1 (i)                      2. (iii)                      3. (ii)                      4. (iii)

**C. Answer the one sentence :****Ans.**

- About 47,000 plant species.
- Jamun trees are found in Tropical Rain Forest.
- The Tropical Rainforest.
- Teak, sal, sandalwood, mahogany, shisham.
- Forest Research Institutes.

**D. Fill in the blanks :****Ans.**

- Gifts of nature are known as **natural resources**.
- Tropical Rainforest** forests are very dense.
- Thorn forests receive rainfall less than **80 cm**.
- Project Rhino is being implemented **Kaziranga** Wildlife Sanctuary in Assam.
- In a **zoo**, we can watch the different animals and birds very closely.

**E. Match the following :****Ans.**

- |                               |   |                            |
|-------------------------------|---|----------------------------|
| 1. Tidal forests              | → | i. Dehradun and Coimbatore |
| 2. Pelican and Siberian Crane | → | ii. Gujarat                |
| 3. Forest Research Institute  | → | iii. Mangrove forests      |
| 4. Gir Forests                | → | iv. Migratory birds        |

## F. Short Answer Questions :

Ans.

1. Natural vegetation is the plant-cover in its original form without much changes by man. India have a great variety of natural vegetation. About 47,000 plant species are found in India. According to an estimate India is tenth in the world and fourth is Asia in plant diversity. This is due to the difference in climate, soil, physical features and relief of the country.
2. **The Thorny Forests :** There forests are mostly found in those areas. Where the average annual rainfall is less than 80 cm. The trees in such areas are widely scattered with bushes and shrubs in between. Even the small trees have deep roots, thick skins and long thorns. In areas of scanty rainfall, these forests generally fade into scrub and thorny bushes. Thorn forests are mostly found in the plains of Punjab, Haryana, Rajasthan, parts of Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh and the drier parts of the Deccan Plateau. Babul and Kikar are the main trees. Wild palms are common in wetter areas.

### **The Tidal Forests**

These are also called the mangrove forests. These are found in those areas which are flooded by the high tides of seas. Mainly these forests are found along the deltas of the rivers, especially the deltas of the Ganga, Mahanadi, Godavari and Krishna rivers. Mangrove and Sundri trees are the common trees found in the Ganga delta in West Bengal. It is also called the Sunderbans.

3. Social forestry programmes like 'Van Mahotsav' involve planting thousands of trees along roads, railway lines and hill slopes are increasing India's total forested areas.
4. Tigers and rhinoceros are some endangered species of wildlife in India, so for them special projects have been prepared. Project Tiger has proved very successful. About 16 tigers reserves have been set up in different parts of India where special care is being taken for the all round protection and betterment of tigers. Likewise, Project Rhino is also being implemented at Kaziranga Wildlife Sanctuary of Assam.
5. In order to save wildlife our government has taken several steps. The government has set up 86 National Parks. In these

parks wildlife, natural vegetation and natural beauty are preserved. Tigers are preserved in Corbett Park. There is a park for rhinoceroses in Assam. There are also wildlife and bird sanctuaries where both rare birds and animals live and roam about without any fear of being hunted. There is a large bird sanctuary at Bharatpur.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

**1. The Tropical Rain Forests**

These forests are found in regions with rainfall above 300 cm. The climate is highly moist and humid. The temperature is even. The dry season is very short. The vegetation consists of evergreen and semi-evergreen trees, so it also called as Evergreen forests. These forests are very dense. Very little light penetrates the ground. The trees are very tall.

2. The Himalayan varies from tropical to alpine types. There are tropical deciduous forests at the foothills. Coniferous forests are found at the heights between 1,500 and 3,300 metres. Blue pines, cedars, silver firs and deodar are the common trees here. Thereafter at 3500 metres and above the alpine variety of plants such as shrubs, scrubs and grass are commonly found. Beyond the Alpine belt (height about 6,000 metres) is the area of permanent snow and no vegetation grows there.

**3. Wildlife**

The wildlife in our country is rich and varied. The forests in the mountains, hills, plains, deserts and deltas of India are inhabited by a variety of animal life. More than 5,000 species of animals and 1,200 species of birds are found in the Indian forests. There are elephants, rhinoceroses, tigers, lions, etc. India is the only country in the world that has both lions and tigers. Lions of the Gir forests in Gujarat are well-known all over the world. Tigers are found in the Himalayan region, the forests of Madhya Pradesh and Sundarbans of West Bengal. A large variety of deer and antelope, monkeys and langurs, wolves, jackals and hyenas are found in the hills. Common birds are mynah, bulbul and parrots. Camels, wild asses are found in Thar region and in Gujarat. Elephants and rhinoceroses roam in Assam, Kerala and Karnataka respectively.

The number of some species of animals like the cheetah, lion, musk, deer, tiger, rhinoceros and the Great Indian bustard is limited. Their number has been declining at a fast rate.

In order to save wildlife our government has taken several steps. The government has set up 86 National Parks. In these parks wildlife natural vegetation and natural beauty are preserved. Tigers are preserved in the Corbett Park. There is a park for rhinoceroses in Assam. There are also wildlife and bird sanctuaries where both rare birds and animals live and roam about without any fear of being hunted. There is a large bird sanctuary at Bharatpur. Many Zoological Parks have also been set up by the government in different parts of India to preserve wildlife.

Tigers and rhinoceroses are some endangered species of wildlife in India, so for them special projects have been prepared. Project Tiger has proved very successful. About 16 tiger reserves have been set up in different parts of India where special care is being taken for the all round protection and betterment of tigers. Likewise, Project Rhino is also being implemented at Kaziranga Wildlife Sanctuary of Assam.

4. Both natural vegetation (or forests and wildlife (or animals and birds etc.) are our national wealth. Hence every attempt should be made to conserve them.

Forest Research Institutes (FRIs) have been set up at Dehradun in Uttarakhand and Coimbatore in Tamil Nadu. There is a proper government policy for protection, preservation and development of forests. India has been following this policy since 1984. It was revised in 1952 and 1988. It aims at preventing the spread of deserts and checking soil erosion. It also aims at efficient utilisation and forest produce and optimum substitution of wood with other products.

The government has put up certain controls on exports of forest products and made sandalwood oil a restricted item of export. Social forestry programmes like 'Van Mahotsav' which involve planting thousands of trees along roads, railway lines and hill slopes are increasing India's total

forested areas.

Animals are very important part of our national heritage and must be preserved at all costs as they add to the beauty of nature. Our government have been taken many steps in this direction.

Biosphere reserves have been set up in various parts of India where wild animals and birds are kept in their natural habitat. Nilgiri at the junction of Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Kerala, and Nanda Devi in Uttarakhand are some such biosphere reserves. India has 86 national parks, 480 wildlife sanctuaries and 35 zoological gardens to protect wildlife. Marshy wetlands are coral reefs in shallow tropical waters in the Gulf of Mannar, Andaman and Nicobar, Lakshadweep islands and the Gulf of Kutch are also being protected from exploitation and damage by oil spills. We observe a 'Wildlife Week' in the first week of October each year. Further, hunting of animals has been banned by the government. With all these efforts we should go a long way in enjoying nature's bounties of our rich flora and fauna.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

1

## HISTORY

### When, Where and How

#### Exercise

#### A. Oral Questions :

- Ans.**
1. Coins are important in establishing historical facts. They provides details about the remains, including. The time period they belong to and how people lived at that time. They can provide further details and livelihood and aspects of religious beliefs.
  2. The people keep on moving in ancient times in search of food and shelter. Hunting and gathering was their way of life. The people of the ancient times were wanderers, moving from place to place in search of shelter, animals and food.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :z

- Ans.** 1. (ii)    2. (iv)    3. (i)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. It was around 2.5 million years ago that man appeared on the Earth.  
2. Dates in history is expressed by two terms—BC and AD.  
3. A pass is the way for transportation in hilly areas. The passes in the mountains acted as routes of contact through which ideas, traditions and culture were exchanged.  
4. Some land documents or literary sources were recorded on copper plates and referred to as tamrapatras.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. Before paper, books were written on **palm** leaves.  
2. Man appeared on the Earth around **2.5 million** years ago.  
3. Literary sources include all works **written** in the **past**.  
4. Archaeological sources are usually found during **excavations**.  
5. The Harappan script is a kind of **decoding** writing.  
6. The period for which do not have written records is known as **prehistory**.

**E. Match the following :**

- |             |                      |                        |
|-------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| <b>Ans.</b> | 1. Boustrophedon     | i. Pictographic script |
|             | 2. Archeology        | ii. Megasthenes        |
|             | 3. Meghaduta         | iii. A type of script  |
|             | 4. Organic evolution | iv. Digging            |
|             | 5. Indica            | v. Kalidasa            |
|             | 6. Sumerians         | vi. Origin of man      |

**F. Who/What am I?**

- Ans.** 1. I can be engraved on rocks and pillars. **inscription**  
2. I am written on the leaves of palm trees. **Manuscript**  
3. I wrote the *Arthashastra*. **Kautilya**  
4. I study objects from an archeological site. **Archaeologists**  
5. The French found me in Egypt in 1799. **Hieroglyphic script**  
6. I stretched from west to east. **Boustrophedon**

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. In simple words, we can say that history is the life story of man from the earliest period to the present day. To



understand the present, we need to study and understand the past.

2. The findings of modern evolutionary researches tell us that life began on the Earth even before prehistory. As a matter of fact, a number of living organisms including plants, fish, reptiles and birds appeared on the Earth a long time before man did. And, ever since life began on the Earth, these organisms have been changing. Some older forms have perished and new ones have come into existence. This process is known as organic evolution.
3. Literary sources include all works written in the past. Long ago, before paper was used, books were written on palm leaves or on the bark of the birch tree. These books are referred to as manuscripts.
4. Dates in history is expressed by two terms BC and AD. The years before the birth of Jesus Christ are written as BC, i.e., Before Christ. They are counted backwards. For example, 100 BC comes before 99 BC.  
The years after the birth of Jesus Christ are written as AD, i.e., Anno Domini, meaning in the year in our Lord. These years are counted forwards. For example, AD 99 comes before AD 100.
5. With the passage of time, more durable materials began to be used for important documents or instructions from the kings. Scribes carved the writings onto stone surfaces using chisels and hammers. These were called inscriptions.
6. Archaeological objects are usually found during excavations at historical sites. Experts, known as archaeologists study such objects. They provide details about the remains, including the time period they belong to and how people lived at that time.

## **H. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

### **1. Sources of History**

There are several sources from which we may get information about the past. Each of these has a part to play in our bid to have the complete picture of the past. Two main types of source material are literary and archaeological.

#### **Literary Sources**

Literary sources include all works written in the past. Long

ago, before paper was used, books were written on palm leaves or on the bark of the birch tree. These books are referred to as manuscripts. These works deal with religion, science and medicine. Most ancient books in North India were written in Sanskrit, Pali or Prakrit. In the South, Tamil was used.

With the passage of time, more durable materials began to be used for important documents or instructions from the kings. Scribes carved the writings onto stone surfaces, using chisels and hammers. These were called inscriptions. They usually gave details of battles won (*Prashastis*) or instructions from the ruler to the common people (*Rajyadesh*). Some land documents were recorded on copper plates and referred to as *tamrapatras*.

Literary sources can be classified into indigenous and foreign works. Indigenous literature includes works of Indian writers. On the other hand, foreign literary works were those written by visitors from abroad. These include works such as the *Indica* by the Greek author Megasthenes, the writings of Fa Hien and other travellers who visited India during different periods.

Literary sources can be further divided into secular (non-religious) and sacred (religious). The *Arthashastra* by Kautilya and *Meghadoota* and *Kumarasambhavam* by Kalidasa are examples of secular literature, while the Vedas are considered sacred.

### **Archaeological Sources**

Like literary sources, archaeological sources also give us information of past events and civilisations. These sources include ruins of buildings, pieces of pottery, weapons, baked clay objects, metallic objects, stone tools, ornaments, sculptures, paintings, pots, pans and coins. Archaeological objects are usually found during excavations at historical sites. Experts, known as archaeologists study such objects. They provide details about the remains, including the time period they belong to and how people live at that time. They even study grains, plant remains and the bones of animal found at excavated sites. These can provide further details about food, livelihood aspects of religious beliefs.

2. Several literary sources from the ancient period are written in scripts that are no longer used and are therefore, unknown to us now. These scripts have to be deciphered or 'decoded' to understand what they say. For example, the Harappan use a pictographic script which historians have not yet been able to decipher. Another difficulty is that the Harappan script is Boustrophedon in which one line is written left to right and the next, right to left.
3. Literary and archaeological sources both provide information required to write history. Historians study the information to reconstruct the events of the past, using clues provided by the various sources. History is thus the sequence of events ascertained in the light for their study by the historians. To accurately interpret history, historians must consider all sources available and must not impose their own thoughts or ideas on the information they provide. They should use both types of sources to confirm their interpretation and ensure an impartial treatment.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

2

## The Earliest Societies

### Exercise

**A. Oral questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Early man used meat to eat. As time passed these man realised that plants offer a wide variety of food. Fruits, nuts, grasses etc. provided a good alternative to meat which remained their main diet for a long time.
2. Fire was undoubtedly the most important discovery of the Palaeolithic Age. Interestingly, it was probably an accidental discovery. It is likely that while striking two pieces of flint together to shape into tools, man noticed sparks. These could be produced on demand and ignite dry leaves. And so, he learnt to create fire. In the course of time he might have also discovered that fire could be used for cooking. He now had softer and tastier meat. Fire also killed the germs in the raw meat, thus improving his health. This

also helped him to scare away the animals while resting in caves.

**B. Multiple choice questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans. 1. (iv)                      2. (iii)                      3. (i)

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans. 1. Early man had evolved from **apes** like creature.  
2. Early man used fire for **cooking** and **safety**.  
3. Hunting and gathering was a way of life in **palaeolithic** age.

**D. State whether the following sentence are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans. 1. False                      2. False                      3. True                      4. False.

**E. Match the following :**

- Ans. 1. Neolithic man → i. Food gatherer  
2. Chalcolithic Age → ii. Middle stone age  
3. Palaeolithic Age → iii. Discovery of copper  
4. Mesolithic Age → iv. Food-producer

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans. 1. The tools of Mesolithic man are called microliths. His tools and weapons improved to a great extent during the Mesolithic age. Apart from bones, horns and chipped stone tools, he made Microliths which were small and fixed on wood or bones. They were used as spears, saws and arrows.  
2. Since stone were used on a large scale, the prehistoric age is known as the Stone Age. The Stone Age is divided into four periods Palaeolithic, Mesolithic, Neolithic and Chalcolithic.  
3. The people of the Palaeolithic Age were wanderers, moving from place to place in search of shelter, animals and food. Hunting and gathering was their way of life.

**4. Core Tools**

Core Tools were made by chipping off pieces from hand-sized stones. They were large, hence used for various purposes such as digging the Earth, cutting trees, sharpening wood, etc. They used this stone axe as a main tool and carried it as a personal weapon.

Some of these stone implements have been found in the Soan river valley (Pakistan), upper Narmada and near Chennai.

**Flake Tools**

Flake Tools were made from sharp pieces that broke off

while shaping core tools. These were used for skinning the animals.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Skills and Knowledge of Palaeolithic Man**

- (i) Early man, who was a hunter and gatherer started living in caves.
  - (ii) To ensure protection from extreme weather he covered himself with coarse animal skin and large leaves.
  - (iii) He started moving from one place to another (nomadic life) and also started collecting nuts, fruits, roots or plants.
  - (iv) The Early man used to move in groups to scare away wild animals.
  - (v) Though Early men moved in large groups they were still afraid of lightning and thunder.
  - (vi) The primary weapon was stone axe often used in hunting. Flake tools were used for cutting animal skin to be used as clothes or for cutting plants.
  - (vii) They also practised painting. Painted rocks and caves in Bhimbetka, Madhya Pradesh shows hunters-gatherers chasing animals and birds. This clearly proved the existence of Palaeolithic period.
2. With the passage of time, Palaeolithic man transformed from a hunter-gatherer to a food producer or farmer. This period of transition is called the Mesolithic Age. His tools and weapons improved to a greater extent during the Mesolithic Age. Apart from bones, horns, chipped stone tools, he made Microliths which were small and fixed on wood or bones. They were used as spears, saws and arrows. Development of finer tools was a characteristic trait of this period.
- The Mesolithic tools have been excavated from many places in Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Tamil Nadu and Rajasthan. Mesolithic man slowly started setting in groups at one place.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Archaeological objects are usually found during excavations at historical sites. Experts who study such objects are known as archaeologists. They provide details about the remains, including the time period they belong to and how people lived at that.
  2. Domestication is a process in which people grow plants and look after animals. Useful plants were domesticated by the man. People selected those plants that yield large size grain and had strong stock capable of bearing the weight of the ripe grain.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (iv)                      2. (ii)                      3. (i)                      4. (ii)

**C. State whether the following sentences are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. False                      4. True.

**D. Match the following :**

- Ans.**
- |                      |   |                                    |
|----------------------|---|------------------------------------|
| 1. Stone tools       | → | iii. Goat                          |
| 2. Burial at Mehgarh | → | ii. Mother Earth                   |
| 3. Provider of food  | → | i. First metal used                |
| 4. Copper            | → | iv. Sickle blades, grinding stones |

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. After the lapse of a long period in about 10,000 BCE, he began to produce his own food and lead a settled life. He began to domesticate and herd those animals which he formerly used to hunt and kill. This new stage in his life is known as the Neolithic or New Stone Age.
  2. He started leading a settled life.
  3. Domestication is a process in which people grow plants and look after animals.
  4. Here, stone tools have been found. When the site was dug deeper, polished stone tools, ceramics and items used in the house, such as corn grinders and pestles were found.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The invention of the potter's facilitated the making of earthenwares. Now man began to design different types of pots for his daily use. It made his life easier in many ways. He could now store foodgrains which were in surplus. He also stored water. He now cooked food in vessels.
2. Some of the earliest plants to be domesticated were wheat and barley.  
Perhaps, the dog, the goat and the sheep were the earliest domesticated animals. Very soon the Neolithic man started domesticating cow, bull, donkey, hen, pig etc. The animals were used for carrying heavy things and ploughing fields etc.
3. Historians have found the evidence of the world's first farming community in the region between the Nile valley (Egypt) in the west and the Tigris and Euphrates rivers (Iraq) in the east. This area is known as the Fertile Crescent. They grew wheat and barley.
4. The beginning of agricultural practices completely changed the life of humans. In order to cultivate land and grow crops, man needed water. So, he began to settle near the banks of rivers and lakes, in proper dwelling areas, instead of caves. He built mud houses with thatched roofs. Gradually, a cluster of these houses developed into a village and man began living in a community.
5. Following agriculture, the discovery and use of metals mark the next major change in the progress of civilisation. Copper was first metal to be discovered and used by man. It could be shaped into various tools. The period when man used both copper and stone tools is called the Chalcolithic Age or the Copper Age.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

## A. Oral Questions :

- Ans.**
- The Harappan people knew the art of writing. Their script is pictographic and each sign stands for a sound, abstract or object. But unfortunately, it has not been deciphered till now. These written documents known as scribes.
  - The Harappans also made seals out of stone. Flat and rectangular seals have been found in large numbers at Mohenjodaro. The seals usually have a picture of an animal like a bull, or one-horned animal on them. We should know that pictographs are the picture like signs used as script by the Harappans.

## B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (✓) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (iii)

## C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
- By the end of the **Neolithic** period, man started getting familiar with metals.
  - The rise of cities in the **Bronze** age marked the beginning of **civilization**.
  - Granaries and large halls had been found in **Harappa** and **Mohenjodaro**.
  - Gold** and **silver** were used to make tools, weapons, ornaments and vessels.
  - Dholavira is located on Khadir Beyt in the Rann of Kutch.

## D. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :

- Ans.** 1. False                      2. False                      3. False                      4. True

## E. Match the following :

- Ans.**
- |             |   |                |
|-------------|---|----------------|
| 1. Gold     | → | ii. Lothal     |
| 2. Copper   | → | iii. Karnataka |
| 3. Dockyard | → | iv. Rajasthan  |
| 4. Tin      | → | i. Afghanistan |

## F. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans.** 1. The upper part built on a raised platform made of mud bricks was known as citadel. The citadels of Mohenjodaro and



Harappa were surrounded by high walls of baked bricks. The bricks were laid in an interlocking pattern in order to make the walls strong.

The citadel had some special buildings like the granaries, the more important workshops and the religious buildings. For example in Mohenjodaro, a very special tank described as the Great Bath by archaeologists, was built in the citadel.

2. Faience is not a naturally found material. It is produced artificially. Sand or powdered quartz was shaped into an object was then glazed usually in blue or sea-green colours. It resulted in a shiny and glassy surface. Generally, beads, bangles, earrings and tiny vessels were made of faience.
3. The Harappans were gifted with high talent regarding crafts and industries. Most of the things excavated from the Harappan sites are made of stone, shell and metal, including copper, bronze, gold and silver.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The cities of the Harappan civilisation were very well-planned. The cities were built according to a well laid out scientific plan. There was an excellent uniformity in the planning and construction of the cities. Most of the cities were divided into two parts a high citadel in the west and a lower town in the east. The streets cut each other at right angles. There were covered drains along the roads.
2. The factors responsible for the decline of the Harappan civilisation can be studied as under :
  - The area was heavily flooded frequently, was ravaged by earthquakes as well. Thus the cities may have been destroyed by flood and earthquakes.
  - The civilisation got its prosperity from trade. With a decline in trade, the cities also declined.
  - According to some scholars, the civilisation came to an end because its rulers lost their control. Sites in Sindh and west Punjab (now Pakistan) were abandoned whereas many people settled down into newer, smaller settlements to the east and the south. New cities came into emergence about 1400 years later.
  - Some scholars believe that barbarian invasions caused the downfall of the civilisation. The cities may have

been attacked and the inhabitants could not defend themselves.

Thus, a number of factors caused the decline of the Harappan civilisation.

- The drainage system of the Harappan cities was excellent. The cities had covered drains, carefully laid out in straight lines. Drains in houses were connected to those on the streets and smaller drains led into bigger ones. Drains were covered with stone slabs. Inspection holes were provided at intervals in order to keep them clean.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

5

## Different Ways of Living

### Exercise

#### A. Oral Questions :

- Ans.
- The Vedic Age is named so because the major source of information about this age the four Vedic.
  - The Sabha and samiti were the earliest form of Democracy as they were bodies either elected by the people or were consisting of all the people itself. They were similar in nature to today's legislative assemblies.

#### B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

- Ans.
- |          |          |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. (iii) | 2. (ii)  | 3. (iv) |
| 4. (i)   | 5. (iii) |         |

#### C. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :

- Ans.
- |          |          |         |         |          |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|
| 1. False | 2. False | 3. True | 4. True | 5. True. |
|----------|----------|---------|---------|----------|

#### D. Match the following :

- Ans.
- |             |   |                     |
|-------------|---|---------------------|
| 1. Megalith | → | i. Indian physician |
| 2. Aryan    | → | ii. Used in battles |
| 3. Chariots | → | iii. Stone boulder  |
| 4. Charaka  | → | iv. River Ghod      |
| 5. Inamgaon | → | v. Superior         |

#### E. Complete the following sentences :

- Ans.
- The word 'Veda' means knowledge and **wisdom**.
  - The Rigveda contains 1028 hymns in praise of **Gods and**

### **Goddesses.**

3. The Upanishads deal with the Indian philosophy and evolved theories of **Karma**.
4. Slaves were treated as the **property**.
5. Megaliths are found in **South India**.
6. Inamgaon is a site on the river **Ghod**.
7. Charaka wrote a book on medicine, known as **Charaka Samhita**.

### **F. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The Indus Valley Civilization declined around 1500 BC, but its culture continued in the villages. It was during this time that the Aryans arrived in India. It is generally believed that they came from Iran or from Central Asia. Some scholars are of the opinion that the Aryans were a tribe of people who had to migrate to different parts of the world as life became difficult for them in their original homeland. They entered India, perhaps through the passes in the Hindukush mountains.  
Some scholars on the other hand believe that they were the original inhabitants of India. The most ancient period of the Indo-Aryans extended from around 1500 BC to 600 BC.
2. The Vedas are the main sources of information on the Vedic Age. The four Vedas-Rigved Samavdeya, Yajurveda and Atharvaveda were written by the Aryans themselves. Hence, they provide a complete picture of life in the Vedic Period. The hymns of the Vedas give a lot of information about the religious practices of the Aryans. In addition, they cast light on the other aspects of the Aryan lifestyle.
3. The Rigveda describes two groups in terms of their work-the priests or brahmins, who performed various rituals, and the rajas. The rajas were not monarchs. They had no capital, palaces or armies, nor did they collect taxes.
4. About 2000 years ago, Charaka in his book Charaka Samhita, stated that human body 360 bones. Charaaka concluded this figure by counting the teeth joints and cartilage.
5. The word 'Megalith' literally means a big stone. The stone boulders were carefully arranged by people and were used to mark burial sites. Large stones were placed all around the

graves. Hence, they were known as Megaliths. The practice of building Megaliths started around 3000 years ago. It came into prevalence throughout the Deccan, South India, in the north-east and Kashmir.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The Rigveda is the oldest of the Vedas and contains 1028 hymns in praise of the gods and goddesses. Most prayers in Rigveda, are for cattle, children (particularly sons) and horses. Horses drew the chariots which were used in battles. Generally, battles were fought for self-defence, for expansion of territories, for plunder and against animal thieves. The issues like water and capturing the people also led to battle.

The obtained wealth was distributed among the leaders, priests and the people. Some of the wealth was performing Yajnas or sacrifices. Offerings of milk, grain, ghee, somras and in some cases even of animals were made to gods and goddesses. It is worth mentioning that offerings were made into the fire.

2. The culture which originated in South India after the Stone Age, is known as Megalithic culture. According to historians, South India witnessed a sudden transformation from Stone Age to Iron Age without any Chalcolithic or Bronze Age between them. The two significant characteristics of Megalithic culture are as under :

- (i) its being closely related to the Iron Age,
- (ii) use of black and red pottery.

The word 'Megalith' literally means a big stone. The stone boulders were carefully arranged by people and were used to mark burial sites. Large stones were placed all around the graves. Hence, they were known as Megaliths. The practice of building Megaliths started around 3000 years ago. It came into prevalence throughout the Deccan, South India, in the north-east and Kashmir.

3. A child is recognised from small size but, no major differences in the bones of a girl and a boy can be made. The difference between a male and a female skeleton is found with jewellery, it is considered to be a woman. But men also wore ornaments, so it was difficult. A better way of

identifying is to look at the hip or the pelvic area of a woman which is generally larger, to enable child bearing. These distinctions are done on modern skeleton studies. About 2000 years ago, Charaka in his book Charaka Samhita, stated that human body had 360 bones. Charaka concluded this figure by counting the teeth joints and cartilage. However, modern skeleton studies count only 206 bones. Thus skeleton provide the knowledge about our past.

4. Archaeologists assume that objects discovered with a skeleton, probably belonged to the dead person. Sometimes, more objects are found in one grave than in another. In Brahmagiri, a skeleton was buried with 33 gold beads, 2 stone beads, 4 copper bangles and one conch shell whereas the other skeleton only had a pot. This shows the difference in status, amongst the people who were burried. Some were rich, while others were poor.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Rise of Early States

### Exercise

#### **A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Magadha had two very powerful rulers, Bimbisara and Ajatashatru. They tried to conquer other Janapadas.
  2. Buddhist texts like the Jataka Tales, which deals with the supposed previous births of Lord Buddha, give a detailed description of the society during this period. The period from 600 BC to 400 BC.

#### **B. Multiple Choice Questions (CCE Pattern)**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (i)                      3. (ii)

#### **C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. Villages were controlled by a headman known as Gramini, who reported to king directly.
  2. In Monarchical system states were ruled by kings and in Republic system states were ruled by a chief called Ganapati elected by a group of people.

3. The people of Vajji were called Ashtakulika meaning a family of eight.
4. States were ruled by a chief called Ganapati elected by a group of people. It was not hereditary.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

**Ans.**

1. People of Vajji were called **Ashtakulika**.
2. Group of people setting together in one territory was called **Janapada**.
3. Big state was called as **Mahajanapada**.
4. There were **14** Mahajanapadas existing in north India.

**E. Find the 'I' in the given statements with the given clues :**

**Ans.**

1. I control the villages as a headman. **Gramini**
2. I am a chief elected by a group of people. **Ganapati**
3. I am a ruler of Magadha, fought for 16 years against Vajji. **Ajatashatru**.
4. I am a powerful ruler. My capital is Pataliputra. **Mahapadma Nanda**.

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Group of people (jana or tribe) settling together in one territory was called Janapada. For instance, if Kuru tribe settled, their territory was known as Kuru Janapadas.
2. Buddhist texts mention that sixteen such Mahajanapadas of which fourteen were very powerful, existed in the whole of North India from 600 BC to 400 BC. These sixteen states constantly fought among themselves. Later four states became prominent. These are AVANTI, VATSA, MAGADHA and KOSALA.
3. The present name of Rajagriha is Rajgir. He is situated in Bihar.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Magadha emerged as the most powerful mahajanapada in this period. This was due to many factors :
  - It was located in the Gangetic basin where the soil was very fertile and yielded large harvests. Land revenue was high and it provided a substantial income for the kingdom which enabled the rulers to maintain a large army.
  - Timber and elephants, provided by the eastern forest to Magadha, were used for constructing buildings and

- elephants also used in the army.
  - Magadha had large deposits of iron-ore, which was used to make agricultural implements and weapons.
  - Natural barriers like hills and rivers protect the capital from any attack.
2. Land revenue was the main source of income for the government. It was fixed between one-fourth and one-sixth of produce, depending upon the fertility of the soil. Arthashastra also mentions a water tax and a road tax. Other sources of income for the state included forests, mines, trade, crafts and customs duties on imports. The king also received tributes in kind from different parts of the empire. The money collected was used to maintain the army, pay salaries, supports various building works and other public utility services such as roads and hospitals.

3. **The Political System**

The political system was of two types :

**Monarchical System** : The following were the features of Monarchical system :

- States were ruled by kings.
- Kings was very powerful and was the law maker. Kingship was hereditary.
- Tax collected from people was used by the king of army and roads.
- Kingdoms always nearly came up in fertile areas so they were quite rich.

Examples are Magadha, Avanti and Kosala states.

**Republic System** : The following were the features of Republic system :

- States were ruled by a chief called Ganapati elected by a group of people. It was not hereditary.
- Ruler ruled with assistance from elders of Kshatriya family.
- They were constituted by either a single tribe or many tribes.
- Tax collected from people was spent on army and for the welfare of the citizens.
- The states were always located near hills. Hence, they were not so prosperous like the monarchies.





**E. Match the columns :**

**Ans.**

- |   |   |                  |
|---|---|------------------|
| 1. He believed that a balanced life helps in attaining 'moksha' | → | i. Tripitakas    |
| 2. The Buddhist sacred texts are collectively known as          | → | ii. Priyadarsena |
| 3. Buddha preached in   | → | iii. Buddha      |
| 4. Daughter of Mahavira   | → | iv. Upanishads   |
| 5. This literally means, 'sitting down near'.                   | → | v. Pali          |

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Upanishad literally means, 'sitting down near' and the texts comprise of conversations between teachers and students. Ideas are presented through simple dialogues.
2. Buddha established many monasteries (viharas) where the Buddhist monks lived, prayed and preached Buddhism. These were also used as centres of education. Later on, the Buddhist order split into two schools namely Hinayana and Mahayana. Hinayana was the original and unchanged form of Buddhism. Mahayana was its new and amended form.
3. Gautam Buddha attained enlightenment under a peepal tree and Bodhi Gaya in Bihar. Since then he came to be known as the Buddha (the enlightened one) and Tathagat (one who has attained the truth). The tree under which he attained knowledge became the tree of wisdom or the bodhivriksha.
4. Buddhism, being a very simple religion, spread rapidly in and outside India. Besides India, it came to be a popular religion in many other countries like China, Sri Lanka, Japan, Burma (now Myanmar), Thailand, Java, Cambodia, Tibet, Indonesia, etc.
5. Vardhamana Mahavira is generally regarded as the founder of Jainism. The Jains believe that Mahavira had 23 predecessors known as tirthankaras. The first was Rishabhadeva. Mahavira was the twenty-fourth and last tirthankara.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Guatam Buddha was the founder of Buddhism. His real name was Siddhartha. He was a kashatriya prince of the Shakya clan. Buddha was born in the sixth century BC at Lumbini.

Siddhartha as a child led a sheltered life and was provided every kind of luxury. He was married at an early age to a beautiful princess Yashodhara and was blessed with a son Rahul. However, Siddhartha was not happy at heart. The popular legend says that the sight of an old man, a sick man, a dead body and an ascetic filled him with deep sorrow and thinking.

One night, at the age of 29, Siddhartha took his horse Kanthaka and rode out of the palace.

When he came out of the city, he took off all his jewellery and fine garments and put on ordinary clothes. He wandered as an ascetic for about 6 years.

2. Buddha's main teachings are contained in the Four Noble Truths and the Eight-fold Path.

The Four Noble Truths : These are :

1. Life means suffering.
2. Desire is the main cause of suffering.
3. One must get rid of suffering.
4. To end suffering, one must follow the Eightfold Path or the ashtangika marga.

**Eightfold Path** : The Eightfold Path consists of the following :

- |                      |                        |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Right View        | 2. Right Intention     |
| 3. Right Speech      | 4. Right Action        |
| 5. Right Livelihood  | 6. Right Effort        |
| 7. Right Mindfulness | 8. Right Concentration |

Buddha believed that following the Eightfold Path leads to a balanced life or the middle path not wanting too much of anything. Leading a good life would purify the mind and help attain moksha (no rebirth). Buddha also preached ahimsa or non-violence. He criticized animal sacrifices and the rigid caste system prevailing at that time.

3. Upanishad literally means, 'sitting down near' and the texts comprise of conversations between teachers and students. Ideas are presented through simple dialogues.

In all there are 108 Upanishads which exist today. Of these, the eleven Mukhya (principal) Upanishads were composed between the later Vedic and Mauryan periods. The last of the Upanishad, named Muktika Upanishad was composed in

the 17th century. Some of the best known Upanishads are Mundaka, Prashna, Vrihadaranyak, Isha, Ken, Katha, Taittoreya, Chhandogya, etc.

The Upanishads contain the essence of Hindu philosophy. They constitute the final part of the Vedas and the basis for the philosophy of Vedanta (end of the Vedas). The Upanishads are more spiritual and philosophical in contest as compared to the Vedas. They deal with the philosophical aspects of the Vedas. They contain the views of many religious teachers and sages.

The Upanishads contain many divergent ideas joined together loosely. They set forth the prime Vedic doctrines such as self-realization, the ideal human conduct, meditation, karma, reincarnation of the soul and the nature of true knowledge. In the Upanishads the spiritual meaning of the Vedic texts is brought out and emphasized. The central theme of the Upanishads, however, is upasana (worship) and bhakti (devotion). Most Upanishads highlight the path to take in order to immerse the self with the Supreme Reality. The Upanishads give importance to Monotheism, the concept of an all pervasive, omnipresent Supreme Being. The gods referred to in the Upanishads are Agni, the god of fire; Vayu, the god of wind; Indra, the god of storms; Rudra, the god of destruction; Brahma, the creator; and Vishnu, the preserver.

4. Mahatma Buddha's teachings are compiled in three Pitakas known as 'Tripitakas'. These are Vinay Pitaka, Dhama-sutra Pitaka (Sutta Pitaka) and Abhidharma Pitaka (Abhidhamma Pitaka). These are written in Pali. Also, there are Jataka Tales based on the previous births of the Buddha. These tales provide information about the field and times of the Buddha.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
- Chandragupta Maurya was the founder of the Mauryan Empire.
  - Ashoka embraced Buddhism after the Kalinga War. The War caused large scale destruction. The death destruction and suffering that he saw made him very depressed. He decided to abandon wars and to devote the rest of his life to serve his people.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (iii) 2. (iv) 3. (ii)

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
- Chanakya wrote **Arthashastra**.
  - Chandragupta Maurya was succeeded by **Bindusara**.
  - The sufferings caused by **Kalinga War** changed the life of Ashoka.
  - Special officers called **Dharma Mahamatras** were appointed to spread Buddhism.
  - King was assisted by **Mantri Parishad**.
  - Ashoka died in **232 BC**.

**D. Match the following :**

- Ans.**
- |               |   |                   |
|---------------|---|-------------------|
| 1. Army       | → | v. Sanchi         |
| 2. Stupa      | → | iv. Cavalry       |
| 3. Adhyakshas | → | iii. Superintends |
| 4. Yuktas     | → | ii. Subordinates  |
| 5. Ashoka     | → | i. Kalinga war    |

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
- Chandragupta Maurya (325-297 BC) founded the first most powerful Indian Empire—the Mauryan Dynasty. After consolidating his army, he targeted Punjab region, Gujarat and South India. He expanded the boundaries of his territory from Afghanistan in the west to Assam in the east and from Kashmir in the North up to Karnataka.

2. Chandragupta Maurya, the founder and the most powerful king of the Mauryan dynasty overthrew the last Nanda ruler and established his own empire. He annexed various kingdoms and strengthened his position in Magadha. He was ably guided by his efficient Prime Minister Chanakya who authored the *Arthashastra* (a political) treatise) that formed the basis of political agenda practised by most Hindu sovereigns later on.
3. When Ashoka came to the throne, Kalinga (Orissa) was the only major kingdom which was not under the Mauryan control. It was important, as the route to South India and South-East Asia, both by land and sea, passed through it. In 261 BC, Ashoka attacked Kalinga and conquered it after a fierce battle.
4. The Mauryas built many stupas, viharas and pillars. The Stupa was the most important element in the architecture. It was derived from the ancient funeral mounds made of the Earth and brick that preserved the remains of monks and other important persons. The stupa at Sanchi (near Bhopal), known as the Great Stupa, is the most popular stupa amongst all. King Ashoka built more than 80,000 stupas.
5. *Dhamma* is the Prakrit form of the Sanskrit word 'Dharma', which means religious duty. Ashoka gave up the policy of conquest through war and replaced it with a policy of conquest through Dharma (*Dhamma-Vijaya*). This became Ashoka's goal for the rest of his life. The moral principles included are : non violence, charity, mercy, truth, tolerance, and purity.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. When Ashoka came to the throne, Kalinga (Orissa) was the only major kingdom which was not under the Mauryan control. It was important, as the route to South India and South-East Asia, both by land and sea, passed through it. In 261 BC, Ashoka attacked Kalinga and conquered it after a fierce battle.  
The war caused large scale destruction. About 1,00,000 soldiers and civilians were killed, including over 10,000 of Ashoka's own men. The death, destruction and suffering that he saw made him very depressed. He decided to

abandon wars and to devote the rest of his life to serve his people. Ashoka embraced Buddhism after the Kalinga War.

2. The life history of Chandragupta, his empire and other interesting information are found in the book Indika written by Megasthenes, the ambassador of Seleucus to the court of Chandragupta.
  - Another source is Arthashastra, by Chanakya which deals with politics, economy and military governance of Mauryas.
  - Buddhist edicts written on pillars and rocks by Ashoka found in various parts of India (Gujarat-Junagadh rock inscription, Karnataka-Maski, Chittaldurga etc.) provide a fair account of the Mauryan times.
  - Jain literary sources written by different scholars also mention the kingdoms and their life in that period.
  - Several coins and objects retrieved from sites also reveal about this period.
3. Literary sources such as the Indika and the Arthashastra and the various rock and pillar edicts of Ashoka give us a detailed account of the Mauryan administration.

The Mauryan Empire had an efficient administrative system. It functioned at four levels :

1. Central, 2. Provincial, 3. District, 4. Village

#### **Central Administration**

The king was the supreme authority. He took all the important decisions. He was assisted by a council of ministers (Mantri Parishad). The Prime Minister, Purohita and Senapati were some of the important central ministers. The various branches of administration such as revenue, military etc., were under officers called Amatyas.

#### **Provincial Administration**

The empire was divided into provinces, each headed by a prince known as Kumara. He ruled the province as a representative of the king. The Kumara was assisted by Mahamatyas and council of ministers.

#### **District Administration**

Each province was divided into a number of districts. The Pradeshta was the head of each district, and was assisted by junior officials, such as Yuktas and Rajkutas. Their

functions included the survey and assessment of land, collection of revenue and maintenance of law and order.

### **Village Administration**

Each district consisted of many villages. Villagers assisted the government officials in marking the boundaries of the village maintaining land records and collecting taxes.

4. After the death of Ashoka in 232 BC, the Mauryan empire began to breakup. The later rulers did not have acumen and leadership skills of their predecessors and they were weak. Such a vast empire became difficult to be managed, as the network of roads was damaged by floods. The State became financially weak and the administration failed to collect revenues. Provinces started disintegrating. The last Mauryan Brihadratha, was killed by his Commander-in-Chief, Pushyamitra Sunga in 185 BC. Thus the rule of the Mauryan dynasty came to an end.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

### Exercise

#### **A. Answer the one sentence :**

- Ans.
1. The second urbanisation started around 1500 BC, in the region of Sapta Sindhu.
  2. The grazers were called Gopalakas.
  3. In South India, there were three categories of cultivators. The landowners were called vellalar, ordinary farmers uzhavar and landless labourers adimai or kadaiyar.

#### **B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans. 1. (i)                          2. (ii)                          3. (i).

#### **C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.
1. The first urbanisation in India began during the **Harappan** period.
  2. **Guilds** resembled chamber of commerce.
  3. The use of **new tools** enhanced agricultural production.
  4. **Gramabhojaka** was the largest landowner of the village.

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Trading cities (exports) Ujjain, Mathura, Uraiyur, Taxila.
2. Wealth was measured in terms of coins. Archaeologists have traced several thousands of coins of this period. The initial coins used for about 500 years, were punch-marked coins. They were given this name as the designs were punched on to the metal-silver or copper.
3. Mathura has been a renowned settlement for more than 2500 years. It was significant, as it is located at the crossroads of major routes of travel and trade from the north-west to the east and from north to south. Farmers and herders living in nearby areas provided food for people of Mathura. Mathura also provided some extremely fine sculptures.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Along with the increase in agricultural production, arts and crafts also flourished. Although craftsmen lived in villages, specific crafts developed in areas where the associated raw materials were available.  
It includes extremely fine pottery called the Northern Black Polished Ware. It was normally black in colour and had a fine sheen. However archaeological evidences for many crafts have not survived. It is known from texts that the manufacture of cloth was important. The main centres were like Varanasi in the north, and Madurai in the south. Both men and women were employed in these centres. Most crafts persons and merchants formed associations known as shrenis. These shrenis of craftspersons gave training, procured raw materials, and distributed the finished products. Further, shrenis of merchants organised the trade. Shrenis also served as banks where rich men and women deposited money. This money was invested and part of the interest was returned or used to support religious institutions like monasteries.
2. The second urbanisation started around 1500 BC, in the region of Sapta Sindhu. The Aryans who perhaps came from Central Asia and expanded towards the region of Ganga-Yamuna rivers. This urbanisation later moved towards east Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Bengal and Deccan. The introduction of iron metal in agriculture and craft-making, improved the



lifestyle of the people. The prosperous middle class migrated towards the east, to create new settlements. The developments of finer potteries and several crafts led to professional skill.

It made earlier farmers and herders excel in trading. They even made guilds which resembled 'chamber of commerce', meant for developing trade within the outside the cities which were now about 75 in number. With the increase in trade and commerce, different kingdoms started carrying out economic transactions among themselves, widening the sphere of commerce to a greater extent. In addition to his material needs, man even looked towards God, to express his gratitude for Him. As a result, the number of religious institutions increased. All these factors had a cumulative effect on enhancement of urbanisation and spread to village and towns.

3. The invention of new tools and implements, led to the expansion of land under cultivation leading to agricultural intensification. New varieties of corn and fruits began to be cultivated. Each family occupied a fixed portion of land in the village. All the members of that house, cultivated together as a group. People normally did the work themselves. Sometimes, the work was done by employing labourers and slaves. They paid the land rent from 1/6th to 1/12th of the total produce. The management and control of the village was in the hands of the headman of the village called Gramabhojaka. He was also responsible for the collection of the land rent, as well as administrative affairs. A village Samiti (council) was there for his help. Pasturelands or grazing grounds of the village cattle also existed. The grazers were called '*Gopalakas*'.

**Project/Activity**

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Fa-Hein visited India during the reign of Chandragupta II.
  2. The worship of Bodhisattvas also became popular in Central Asia, China, Korea and Japan. They were people who had attained enlightenment. But they had chosen to remain among the people to work for their welfare.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :****Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (ii)                      4. (iii).

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The most famous Chera king was Nedunjeral Adan.
  2. Gautmiputra Satakarni (AD 106-130) was the greatest Satvahana ruler.
  3. Famous Chinese scholars and pilgrims who visited India were Fa-Hein, Hiuen Tsang and -Tsing.
  4. Ashvaghosa was the writer of Buddhacharita.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. **Pushyamitra Sunga** founded the Sunga dynasty.
  2. The Satavahana were also known as **Andhras**.
  3. The **Chola** kingdom was also called Cholamandala.
  4. **Nedynliyan** was a great Pandya king.

**E. State whether the following are True (T) for False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. True                      2. False                      3. True                      4. False.

**F. Match the following :**

- Ans.**
- |               |   |                                     |
|---------------|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Meander    | → | i. was a great Saka ruler.          |
| 2. Rudradaman | → | ii. converted to Buddhism.          |
| 3. Karikela   | → | iii. founder of Satavahana dynasty. |
| 4. Simuka     | → | iv. was a disciple of Kumarajiva.   |
| 5. Fa-Hein    | → | v. earliest Chola ruler.            |

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The Kushanas had flourishing trade relations with Central Asia, China and Western Asia. Taxila, Ujjain and Mathura were important commercial centres. The famous Silk Route was controlled by the Kushanas. During their rule, one

branch of the Silk Route extended right up to the mouth of the River Indus from Central Asia. From here, silk was sent to Rome through ships.

2. The Satavahanas also known as Andhras, ruled in the Deccan for nearly 300 years. Their capital was Pratisthana (now Paithan in Maharashtra). The Satavahana Dynasty was founded by Simuka; the first powerful ruler was Sri Satakarni. He fought against the kingdom of Kalinga and the Sakas.
3. Kanishka was deeply influenced by Buddhism. During his reign, the fourth Buddhist council was held at Kashmir. This was presided over by a famous scholar Vasumitra. Other scholars who attended this council were Ashvaghosa (who wrote *Buddhacharita*), Nagarjuna, Taranath and Charaka. Buddhism, by this time had split into many sects. In the fourth Buddhist Council, Buddhism was formally divided into Mahayana and Hinayana.
4. Fa-Hein was a disciple of Kumarajiva in China. He left his country China in 399 AD, reached India in 405 AD, during the reign of Chandragupta-II and stayed here for about 6 years till 411 AD. He wanted to collect authentic copies of Buddhist scriptures. The accounts of his travels give us a lot of information on temples and monasteries and many Buddhist legends.

## **H. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

### **1. The Cholas**

The Chola kingdom was also called Cholamandala. The earliest Chola ruler was Karikela, who defeated the combined forces of the Pandyas, the Cheras and eleven minor chieftians. The Cholas were powerful from 200 BC to AD 400. After this, they were defeated by the Pandyas and the Cheras. The Cholas regained their power and became one of the most prominent empires of early Medieval period (9th-10th century AD).

### **The Cheras**

The Cheras, also known as Keralaputra, ruled over an area comprising north Travancore, Cochin and South Malabar. Udiyanjenal was the first important Chera ruler. Their capital was Vajji. The most famous Chera king was

Nedunjeral Adan. The Cheras encouraged trade with Rome and Egypt.

2. In this period, Buddhism enjoyed the patronage of many rulers. Among them, the Kushana King Kaniskha and Indo-Bactrian King Milinda were the most famous ones.

Kaniskha was deeply influenced by Buddhism. During his reign, the fourth Buddhist council was held at Kashmir. This was presided over by a famous scholar Vasumitra. Other scholars who attended this council were Ashvaghosa (who wrote *Buddhacharita*), Nagarjuna Taranath and Charaka.

Buddhism, by this time, had split into many sects. In the fourth Buddhist Council, Buddhism was formally divided into Mahayana and Hinayana.

Mahayana literally means 'greater vehicle'. It became prominent during the reign of Kaniskha who ruled large parts of the Indian subcontinent in the late second century AD.

The worship of Bodhisattvas also became popular in Central Asia, China, Korea and Japan. They were people who had attained enlightenment. But they had chosen to remain among the people to work for their welfare.

In Hinayana Buddhism, the Hinayana Buddhists did not believe in idol worship, or in the worship of the Bodhisattvas.

Kaniskha built many stupas and viharas. He built a monastery at Peshawar.

3. From very ancient times India had maintained close contact with distant lands. The Indian traders used to go to other countries with which they had trade relations. Similarly, the Buddhist monks travelled across the mountains to spread the message of Buddha as far as China. As a consequence, traders and scholars from other countries also came here.

Craftsmen initially settled in areas near to the availability of raw materials. Trading developed as the craftsmen moved away from the source of their raw materials. Traders bought the required materials from villages where they were found, and took them to sell to the craftsmen in the towns.

### Examples :

- Iron came from mines throughout the country.
- Copper was mined in Rajasthan, the Deccan and the foothills of the Himalayas.
- South India provided spices, especially pepper, gold, precious stones, pearls, sandalwood and ebony.

The traders also bought finished goods of the artisans. Transportation of raw materials promoted trade.

Traders, kings and pilgrims contributed great in establishing contacts with distant lands. Thus, India since ancient times, had contact with Rome, Egypt, East Africa, Greece, Iran, Arabia, Tibet, China, West Asian countries and the kingdoms of South-east Asia.

Various new trade routes developed as traders preferred to travel by sea than roads. Arabic traders utilised the monsoon winds to travel in the seas. Ships sailing from the southern end of in the Red Sea would wait for the south-west monsoon to pass, before they set sail. The returning north-east monsoon from across India would bring the ships back. Ship building became an important industry. Brisk trading resulted in the growth of many towns along the coasts.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

### Exercise

#### A. Oral Questions :

- Ans.**
1. India's cultural history was greatly enriched under the Guptas. This period witnessed glorious achievements in art and culture and a flourishing economy. That is why it is known as 'The Golden Age' in Indian history.
  2. Hinduism was revived and became popular during the Gupta reign. People worshipped many gods and goddesses like Shiva, Durga, Ganesh, etc. The Gupta kings worshipped Vishnu and performed religious sacrifice or yajnas.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (ii)    2. (i)    3. (iii)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
- Sri Gupta founded the Gupta Dynasty. However, the first great ruler of the dynasty was Chandragupta I.
  - Allahabad pillars inscription also known as Prayag Prashasti.
  - Kalidasa wrote the Abhijana Shakuntalam.
  - Harshavardhana ruled over north India with his capital at Kannauj. He ruled for 41 years.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
- Chandragupta I was succeeded by his son **Samudragupta**.
  - Chandragupta I** was the first Gupta ruler to be referred as 'Maharajadhiraja'.
  - Harsha moved his capital from **Thanesar** to **Kannauj**.
  - Nagaram** was the assembly of merchants.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. False    2. False    3. True    4. True.

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
- The sources for Gupta period are varied. By the time of the Guptas, we have enough historical sources to get a clear idea of their working and set up. Both archaeological and literary sources inform us about the Gupta period.
  - Kalidasa was the famous poet in the court of Chandragupta II. The famous work of Kalidasa is Abhijana Shakuntalam, Raghuvansham and Meghdootam.
  - He was also known as Chandragupta Vikramaditya. He was the son of Samudragupta.
  - Harsha was a great patron of art. He wrote three plays in Sanskrit-Ratnavali, Priyadarshika and Nagananda.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
- A larger-number of beautiful temples with the Shikhara symbol were built during the Gupta period. Early temples had a large room, where the idol of God was kept. Today, these can be found in Deogarh, in Jhansi and in Sanchi, near Bhopal. Temples were mostly made of bricks and stones. Beautiful fresco-paintings on the wall of Ajanta caves were

- also made in this period by the Guptas.
2. Harsha's administration was decentralized and it was similar to that of the Guptas. Local officers could take decisions. The empire was divided into provinces. The provinces were divided into districts and the districts into villages. Farmers, merchants and craftsmen had to pay taxes. The priests were given donations of land grants. Officers were also given land instead of cash salaries.
  3. **Reasons of Decline**
    - Later Gupta rulers were weak, inefficient and this could not keep kingdom under their control.
    - Due to this, the Governors of provinces revolted and broke away.
    - The Gupta empire became vast and hence it became quite difficult to control it, especially when there were weak rulers on the throne.
    - The attacks by the Hunas, a nomadic tribe from Central Asia, made the empire weak leading to its decline.
  4. The Gupta Age, is known as the Golden Age, because it had a well-organised administration. There was flourishing trade, religious tolerance, achievements in literature, science, etc. The structure of administration of the Guptas was similar to that of Mauryas. However, the Mauryan administration was centralised, whereas during the Gupta rule, the Governors of the provinces were powerful. Administration was thus decentralised. The punishments were mild, yet there were no crimes.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

12

## Culture and Science in Our Past

### Exercise

#### **A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. In the field of metallurgy ancient India had made much progress. The specimens in this field worth seeing are the copper and bronze images and the iron pillar at Mahrauli which keeps its original finish even after bearing the stress

of weather for thousands of years.

2. The two Epics—the Ramayana and the Mahabharata provide information about the social and political conditions of the people of the Epic Age. They mention the names of great kings such as Janaka, Yudhishtira, Dashratha, Krishna and Ravana. They give vivid description of the extent of their empires.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

**Ans.** 1. (iii) 2. (ii) 3. (ii) 4. (ii).

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. Kalidasa.
  2. The Ramayana and the Mahabharata.
  3. The Silappadikaram
  4. Megasthenes. and Manimekai.
  5. Charaka Samhita.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. The Puranas are **eighteen** in number.
  2. **Tripitakas** and **Jatakas** are Buddhist texts.
  3. Anga and Upanga are **Jain texts**.
  4. Tamil poet Thiruvalluvar wrote a poem called **Tirukkural**.
  5. Meghdootam is a well-known work of **Kalidasa**.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) for False (F) :**

**Ans.** 1. True      2. True      3. False      4. True      5. False

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. **Secular Literature** : The biographies, prashastis, autobiographies and accounts of travellers form a part of the secular literature.
  2. Kalidasa wrote the Meghadutam and Raghuvansha.
  3. **The Earliest Vedic texts** : The earliest literary work were perhaps the Vedas. There are four Vedas Rig Veda, Yajurveda, Samaveda and Atharvaveda. The Puranas are sacred Hindu literature which are eighteen in number. There are also two epics—the Ramayana and the Mahabharata.
  4. The two epics provide information about the social and political condition of the people of the Epic Age. They mention the names of great kings and their empires.



5. The Sangam literature provide us the history of the kingdoms of South India.
6. India made remarkable progress in astronomy. Aryabhata calculated the position of the planets, discovered the cause of lunar and solar eclipses, correctly calculated the circumference of the Earth.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The earliest literary work were perhaps the Vedas. The Vedas initially passed down from one generation to the other through oral traditions. They were written and compiled much later. They are the ancient scriptures of the Hindu teachings. There are four Vedas Rig Veda, Yajurveda, Samaveda and Atharvaveda, each consisting of four parts. The primary portion is the mantra or hymn section (samhita). Rigveda is the earliest Vedic text. It is a collection of hymns in praise of various gods. The Yajurveda explains the rituals which should accompany the recitation of hymns. The Sama Veda is a book of prayers, which were to be sung during rituals. The Atharva Veda throws light on the beliefs and practices of the Non-Aryans.
2. The biographies, prashastis, autobiographies and accounts of travellers form a part of the secular literature. The Sangam texts of the south also belong to this category. Most famous of these were the *Arathashastra* of Kautilya, *Harshacharita* by Banabhatta, the dramas of Kalidasa such as *Abijnana Shakuntalam* and the *Meghadootam*. The *Arathashastra* describes the political system and the art of governance. It gives information on the political, social and administration of the Mauryas. Similarly, the *Indika* written by Megasthenes tells us about the political, social and economic conditions during the reign of the Mauryans. Kalidasa lived during the time of the Guptas. He has written many dramas in Sanskrit. His famous work include the *Meghadutam*, *Raghuvansha*, *Ritusamhara*, *Kumarasambhava* and the famous play *Abhijana-shakuntalam*. *Harshacharita* written by Banabhatta is another valuable literary piece of ancient India which contains a description of the early life of King Harsha. Kalhan's *Rajatarangini* is

another famous historical work which describes the history of Kashmir till the twelfth century AD.

The Sangam Texts deals with the history of the kingdoms of South India. It is believed that much of this literature was produced in three Sangams or assemblies of the Tamil poets which were held between the 1st century AD to sixth century AD. This literature has also provided very useful historical information. It provides detailed accounts of some important rulers, commercial activities, administrative set-up and social, economic and religious conditions.

The Silppadikaram and Manimekai the two great Tamil epics and Tirukkural a poem by the Tamil poet Tiruvalluvar also occupy a great place in the Tamil Literature.

3. Ancient India was very advanced in science. The Indians made remarkable progress in the field of Mathematics. The world is indebted to ancient Indians for contribution on three counts, namely, their numerals, decimal system and the discovery of 'zero'.

The science of Algebra owes its development both to the Greeks and the Indians. The Indians had devised the science of Geometry to draw the sacrificial altars for Yajnas. They also knew the acute, obtuse and right angles.

### **Astronomy**

India also made remarkable progress in astronomy. Aryabhatta calculated the position of the planets, discovered the cause of the lunar and solar eclipses, correctly calculated the circumference of the Earth and wrote a books on astronomy which is called Aryabhatiya.

### **Technology**

In the field of technology, these were the India who, for the first time, discovered the art of manufacturing steel. The craftsmanship of the Iron Pillar of Mehrauli, built during the Gupta period, is unmatched. In the field of Chemistry they were also praiseworthy. They invented lasting dyes and the blue colour.

They made different kinds of coins of gold and silver which led to the promotion of commerce and trade. They made some rare specimens of jewellery of gold, silver and other

precious stones which were in great demand in foreign countries.

The Indian craftsmen could make best quality cotton, woollen and silk cloth, and that too with different designs. Such things were in great demand.

### **Geography**

They had precise knowledge of all the geographical features of the Indian sub-continent. The Puranas give a detailed description of several rivers, mountains ranges and natural regions.

### **Medicine**

The science of medicine originates in ancient India as Ayurveda. Sushruta and Charaka were great physicians of ancient India. Sushruta in his *Sushruta Samhita* describe the methods of operating cataract, stone diseases and several other ailments and their treatment. Charaka's *Charaka Samhita* is like an encyclopaedia of Indian medicine. It contains the names of several plants and herbs which were used as medicines.

## 4. **Art and Architecture**

### **Fine Arts and Architecture**

Ancient India had achieved wonderful heights in the fields of fine arts, viz., architecture, sculpture, painting, jewellery, metallurgy, stone and metal polishing, and engineering.

### **Architecture**

In the field of architecture the Great Bath of Mohenjodaro, Buddhist temples at Gaya, the Stupas at Sanchi and Bharhut, the Gupta temples at Deograh and Kanpur, the Lingaraja Temple at Bhubaneshwar, the Mahadeva Temple at Khajuraho, Vishnu Temple at Badami and the Shiva Temple at Tanjore deserve special mention.

### **Sculpture and Painting**

In the field of sculpture and stone-carving, the Indus seals and toys, the Ashokan pillars at Sanchi, Sarnath, Lauria Nandagarh, Rampura, etc., stone images made during the Gupta and the Rajput periods, several other pieces of sculpture made in the Gandhara style and the images carved in stone at the Ajanta and the Ellora caves are worth mentioning.

## Metallurgy

In the field of metallurgy ancient India had made much progress. The specimens in this field worth seeing are also copper and bronze images and the Iron Pillar at Mahrauli which keeps its original finish even after bearing the stress of weather for thousands of years. Ashokan pillars have also kept their original form. The shape and size of these pillars are sufficient to prove the achievements of ancient Indians in the field of engineering as well.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## SOCIAL AND POLITICAL LIFE

1

## Diversity

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (iii)                      3. (iv)

#### B. Oral Questions :

- Ans.**
1. Diversity is a curse or a born, this is depends upon conditions and circumstances. If there is unity in diversity, it is a boon otherwise it is a curse.
  2. Such occupation in which people are engaged in deriving useful goods from natural resources are called primary occupations. Agriculture, mining, fishing, forestry, cattle rearing etc. are the examples of primary occupations.

#### C. Answer the one sentence :

- Ans.**
1. In our country there are 22 regional languages recognised by the constitution of India.
  2. From the Sanskrit language all Indian language have emerged.
  3. Jawaharlal Nehru is the author of 'Discovery of India'.
  4. We celebrate our festivals with joy and fun with our family, relatives and friends.

#### D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. **India** is a land of diversity.

2. **Geographical** and **climatic** conditions determine the economic activities of a region.
3. **Caste** system is peculiar in India.
4. The Muslims pray in a **mosque**.

**E. Match the following :**

- Ans.**
- |                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. The Sikhs      | i. Temples                |
| 2. The Hindus     | ii. The Guru Granth Sahib |
| 3. The Muslim     | iii. Church               |
| 4. The Christians | iv. The Koran             |

**F. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F):**

- Ans.** 1. False      2. False      3. True      4. False

**G. Define the following :**

- Ans.**
1. **Diversity** : The whole world is full of diversity. There is variety of animals and plants. They have different habitats. Their eating habits are different. There are thousands of species of a single family of the living world. Both genetic and environmental reasons are behind it. Though, human beings have similar features and systems which perform their functions, we look so different, wear different clothes, eat different foods. This is called diversity. India is a land of diversity.
  2. **Unity in Diversity** : The diversity that is found in our country gives our nation a very rich cultural heritage. A spite of different languages, religions and food, habits, we have an underlying unity. Also, there is an element of interdependence among different communities which bind us together.

**H. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Geographical and climatic conditions determine the economic activities of a region. For instance, people living near the coast would be engaged in fishing whereas those in the plains would be growing crops. People living in the hills or deserts will be engaged in other occupations. Thus the dress, food and habits would be different depending on the regions they live in.  
India's culture is ever-changing, always adapting to changes caused by internal factors or contact with external cultures and adopting new elements from other countries. Today, in

the age of aeroplanes and e-mails, in an age when travelling for work or leisure has become more common, faster and easier, there is a steady exchange of cultural traditions. We carry our traditions to new places and also adapt to the ways of life of that place.

2. People have the freedom to follow any religion. The main religions today are Hinduism, Islam, Buddhism, Sikhism, Jainism, Christianity and Zoroastrianism.
3. The main holy book of the Hindus is the Bhagwad Gita. The holy book of Muslims is the Koran and the holy book of the Christians is the Bible.
4. The village community supplies food to the towns and cities and is depended on the urban communities to supply it with clothes, electricity, machines for agriculture, etc. Thus, we depend on each other for various needs. This interdependence is what forges a link and a bond of unity. Interdependence exists beyond the boundaries of our own country.

**I. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. India is a land of diversities. Many different social groups can be seen in India. They speak different languages, eat various kind of food, have different habits and believe in different ways of praying.  
From early times, people travelled in search of food and livelihood. While looking for more fertile lands, they had to change their old lifestyle in order to adopt to new place. Thus, as they formed new habits and customs. As a result, their language, food, religion and customs became a mixture of the old and the new. People began to trade with other groups in different places and thus, many of them were influenced by the lifestyles of that place. Different religions developed diverse cultures. Historical developments shaped and influenced different social groups. These differences can be divided into economic, social, political, cultural and religious.
2. Religion in one form or another plays a part in the lives of most of the world's population. At times it dictates what they eat, where they live, what they wear, who they marry and how they think. Inspired by the same religious impulse,

believers do different things. Buddhist monks shave their heads, for example, while many Sikhs never cut their hair at all. Some worship with loud music and vibrant dance, while others sit still in complete silence. And, while some religions will hold out the promise of a future life in the hereafter. But one thing is common to all of them. All religions encourage a life requiring goodness, kindness and harmony.

People have the freedom to follow any religion. The main religions today are Hinduism, Islam, Buddhism, Sikhism, Jainism, Christianity and Zoroastrianism.

We go to different places to pray, but we pray to the same God. The Hindus pray in a temple. They perform puja. They offer sweets and flowers. The main Holy Book of the Hindus is the Bhagwad Gita. The Muslims pray in a mosque. Their Holy Book is the Koran. They offer namaaz (prayers) five times a day. The Muslim women pray at home. The Sikhs pray in a gurudwara. The Holy Book of the Sikhs is the Guru Granth Sahib. The Sikhs sing hymns called gurubani. The Christians pray in a church. They pray to Jesus Christ and Mother Mary. The Bible is the Holy Book of the Christians. We are all the children of one God.

3. The diversity that is found in our country gives our nation a very rich cultural heritage. In spite of different languages, religions and food, habits, we have an underlying unity. Also, there is an element of interdependence among different communities which bind us together.

The village community supplies food to the towns and cities and is depended on the urban communities to supply it with clothes, electricity, machines for agriculture, etc. Thus, we depend on each other for various needs. This interdependence is what forges a link and a bond of unity. Interdependence exists beyond the boundaries of our own country.

Trade and services between different nations help in economic development of each. In order for the world to be peaceful, we need to respect the cultural diversity of other communities. In his book, *The Discovery of India*, Jawaharlal Nehru wrote about the variety and unity of India

and he coined the phrase Unity in Diversity.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

2

## Diversity : Prejudice, Inequality and Discrimination

### Exercise

#### A. Oral Questions :

- Ans. 1. The father of the Indian Constitution, Dr. Bhimrao Ambedkar born in the Mahar Community of Maharashtra.  
2. Full form of ANC is 'African National Congress.'

#### B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans. 1. (iii)                      2. (ii)                      3. (iv).

#### C. Answer in one sentence :

- Ans. 1. Harijans.  
2. India was made a secular state through 42nd Amendment.  
3. Article 14 to 18 deal with right to equality.  
4. Dr. B.R. Ambedkar is considered as the father of Indian Constitution.

#### D. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. Prejudice means to judge other people **negatively**.  
2. Inequality means difference in **treatment**.  
3. **Caste system** is the major cause of inequality.  
4. The term **Apartheid** stands for separation on the basis of race.

#### E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :

- Ans. 1. False                      2. True                      3. True                      4. False.

#### F. Define the following :

- Ans. 1. **Dalits** : The people who belonged to the so called lower caste, is called Dalits.  
2. **Prejudice** : Prejudice means to judge other people negatively or see them as inferior. It generates the feeling of hatred as it considers the other person inferior. Prejudice can be about many things, such as colour of skin (apartheid), region (tribal, rural or urban), language (e.g., English or any other) and religion. Fanatics always consider their religion



as superior.

3. **Stereotype** : When people developed a negative or positive opinion about someone or somethings they end up creating a stereotype.
4. **Preamble** : India was the made a secular state through 42nd Amendment by writing the word 'secular' in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution.

### **G. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Discrimination refers to an unfavourable action, behaviour, outcome or treatment. When people act on the basis of their prejudices they are discriminating. Discriminating may mean not allowing people to participate in activities, restricting their access to work or to live in certain neighbourhood, or denying them something they are entitled to by right and law.
2. **Creating Stereotypes** : When people develop a negative or positive opinion about someone or something, they end up creating a stereotype. We generalise our opinions which are based on pre-convinced ideas of yesteryears.
3. Like prejudice, inequality also leads to discrimination. In simple words, inequality means difference in treatment. There may be prejudices against people belonging to another region or those of different caste, class or religion. Hence the diversity in India, at times, becomes a source of discrimination. Often, anything different from what we have always seen or known, is not always accepted positively.
4. India was made a secular state through 42nd Amendment by writing the word 'secular' in the Preamble of the Indian Constitution. By secularism, we mean that different religions can be promoted themselves. Everyone can follow the religion of one's choice, can safeguard the cultural heritage, speak my language. Both these factors, equality and secularism, have strengthened the unity of India.
5. Untouchables [(Dalits (oppressed))] were the worst suffers before the implementation of the Constitution of India. The people who belonged to the so-called upper caste used to hate them. They neither intermingled with them, nor have social interaction with them. Dalits used to do the needful

work for upper caste people without which they would not have lived a decent life. Still they were not allowed to go to the temple or have water from the public well.

## **H. Long Answer Questions :**

### **Ans. 1. Causes of Discrimination**

- (i) **Social causes** : Discrimination can be different in various societies. Family or parents can become the cause of gender based discrimination in the society.
- (ii) **Religious causes** : Religious fanaticism or religious intolerance may give the feeling of hatred or insecurity to other religion.
- (iii) **Majority vs Minority** : Minor community may feel insecure in the hands of majority.

### **Effects of Discrimination**

- (i) It leads to suspicion, distrust among the communities and bitterness prevails and unity of the country is disrupted.
- (ii) In a democracy, political parties exploit the sentiments of different communities to increase their vote bank. So, healthy political environment is not generated.
- (iii) Racial arrogance, which means the superior feeling of one race over other, is generated.

### **2. Examples of Discrimination**

#### **(i) Caste System in India**

Untouchables [Dalits (oppressed)] were the worst sufferers before the implementation of the Constitution of India. The people who belonged to the so-called upper caste used to hate them. They neither intermingled with them, nor have social interaction with them. Dalits used to do the needful work for upper caste people without which they would not have lived a decent life. Still they were not allowed to go to the temple or have water from the public well.

The father of the Indian Constitution, Dr. Bhimrao Ramji Ambedkar, born in the Mahar community of the Maharashtra, dedicated his life to the welfare and upliftment of the Dalits. Mahatma Gandhi called them Harijans or the children of God B.R. Ambedkar made provision to eradicate this social evil by providing right to equality in the Constitution.

**(ii) Apartheid in South Africa**

The term Apartheid stands for separation on the basis of race. It was a system of racial segregation that was prevalent in South Africa. Under this system, people were legally classified into two racial groups Black and White.

After the Boer War in 1902, the union of South Africa was constituted. Now the European Whites came into light as the new government. They treated the natives and Asian immigrants in the most insulting way. The Blacks were considered second grade citizens. It was common belief that the Whites were born masters and the Blacks were born servants. Blacks were treated in most inhuman ways especially in schools, colleges, offices, industries, clubs, hotels, buses, trains etc. The first and second class train carriages were for Whites and third class for Black only.

3. Year 1976 marked the beginning of anti-apartheid revolt. Nelson Mandela started anti-apartheid struggle through his party 'African National Congress' (ANC). All top leaders of ANC's were arrested in 1963. Mandela and few others were sentenced to life imprisonment. In February 1990, elected President FW de Klerk announced the unbanning of the liberation movements and the release of political prisoners, notably Nelson Mandela. South Africa held its first democratic election in 1994 and Nelson Mandela became the first (Black) President of South Africa. South Africa celebrates 27th April of every year as Freedom Day (Independence Day). In 1993, FW de Klerk and Mandela were jointly awarded the Nobel Peace Prize for their work for the peaceful termination of the apartheid regime, and for laying the foundations of a new democratic South Africa.
4. **Steps needed for the Reduction of Prejudice, Discrimination and Inequality**

**(i) Education**

Both formal and informal means of education should inculcate the feelings of harmony.

**(ii) Laws**

Laws should be made to reduce discrimination and inequalities and should be strictly adhered.

**(iii) Inter-caste Marriages**

Inter-caste marriages should be encouraged.

**(iv) Media**

Media should encourage harmony among different communities.

**(v) Religion should not breed hatred**

Meaning of religion should be propagated in a broader sense which should breed harmony, tolerance and respect for all.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Unitary and Federal**

Governments can also be classified as unitary or federal. In a federal form of government, power is divided between the Centre and States. This division of power lies with the Constitution. In India, the Constitution has given the Centre more power than state. A Unitary form of government is one in which all power is centralised under one central government.

2. In a monarchy, all the power rests with the king. The king or queen is the head of the government.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (i)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The Legislature.
  2. India, United States of America, United Kingdom.
  3. Universal Adult Franchise ensure the right to vote to the citizens of age 18 and above.
  4. Adolf Hitler belonged to Germany.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. India is a **democratic** country.
  2. In monarchy, a **king** is the head of government.

3. In parliamentary form of government the **Prime Minister** is the real head of government.
4. **Local** government is the lowest level of government in India.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F):**

**Ans.** 1. False            2. True            3. True            4. False.

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. **Democracy :** In a democracy, government is run by the representative of the people. Citizens have the right to vote and thereby choose their representatives.
  2. **Judiciary :** The judiciary provide justice to the people.
  3. Today, all modern democratic, states have adopted universal adult franchise, i.e., the right to citizens above the age of 18 to vote.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The government of a country performs a number of functions. These are :
    - (i) It builds the infrastructure of the country by constructing roads, producing and providing electricity, clean drinking water, etc.
    - (ii) It also looks after the welfare of the people by taking up projects for eradicating diseases, providing health services, education, etc.
    - (iii) It governs the country according to the laws of the land. It frames laws also.
    - (iv) It maintains the law and order and punishes those who do not abide by the law.
    - (v) It protects the boundaries of the country and maintains peaceful relations with other countries.
    - (vi) It provides relief and aid to the people affected by natural disasters such as floods, earthquakes etc.
  2. There are different types of government: monarchial, dictatorial and democratic. In present prevailing political scenario, democracy and monarchial form of government are most commonly found.
    - (i) **Monarchy**  
In a monarchy, all the powers rests with the king. The king or queen is the head of the government and has the power to

take all the important decisions. When a monarch (king) dies, the power automatically passes to the next monarch.

**(ii) Dictatorship**

When one person heads the government and rules on the basis of his own wish, without paying any attention to the wishes of the people, it is called an authoritarian government or dictatorship. It is an undesirable form of government where people have to face many hardship due to the whims of the dictators. Adolf Hitler of Germany was one of the most infamous dictators in history.

**(iii) Democracy**

In a democracy, government is run by the representatives of the people. Citizens have the right to vote and thereby choose their representatives. They also have the right to contest the elections. Moreover, the government is answerable to the people for its actions. If it does not fulfil the expectations of the people, it can be voted out of power the next time elections are held.

3. The government in our country works at three different levels :

(i) The lowest level is the local government in a village or a town.

(ii) The government at the state level is called the State Government.

(iii) At the national level is the Central Government.

Government, at these three levels, caters to different kinds of people and takes different kinds of decisions. The local government in village or city deals with local problems faced by people. At state level, the government deals with matters which are of importance to the entire state, e.g., education. The central government generally deals with issues of national importance, such as national security, terrorism etc.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (ii)                      3. (ii)                      4. (iii).

**B. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. The state government provides founding to the Panchayat.  
 2. A few Panchayats are combined to form a Block Samiti. A Block Samiti is the organisation formed to take care of the needs of the whole block.

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. The Sarpanch is elected by the Gram Sabha members.  
 2. The Sarpanch.  
 3. The Gram Panchayat is answerable to Gram Sabha.  
 4. The State government.  
 5. The members of the Panchayat are known as Panchs.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The Panchayat area is divided into **wards**.  
 2. In the Gram Panchayat, seats are reserved for **SC** and **ST**.  
 3. The **Gram Panchayat** is answerable to the Gram Sabha.  
 4. The **Constitution** allows each state to have their own laws for the **Panchayats**.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      (c) False                      (d) False.

**F. Match the following :**

- Ans.** 1. An assembly of villagers → i. Sarpanch  
 2. Panchayat President → ii. Block Samiti  
 3. Level of Panchayat → iii. Gram Sabha  
 4. A Block Level Panchayat → iv. Zila Parishad  
 5. The District Level Panchayat → v. Three

**G. Define the following :**

- Ans.** 1. **Panchayati Raj** : The Panchayati Raj is a system of local government at the village, block and district level. This system enables the local people to run their own local government in rural areas. They participate in the

development work relating to agriculture, irrigation, animal husbandry, education, health, etc., which affects them directly. They not only participate but take decisions regarding their needs themselves. The people at the lowest level thus, get involved in the governance of the country.

- 2. Gram Sabha :** The Gram Sabha consists of all the men and women in a village who are 18 years of age and above. They meet at least twice a year. The Gram Sabha elects their representatives to the Gram Panchayat. The Gram Sabha has the power to review the work done by the Gram Panchayat and examine its accounts of expenditure. If it is not satisfied with the performance of any member of the panchayat, it can remove the member by means of a vote of no-confidence.
- 3. Panch :** The Panchayat area is divided into wards and each ward elects a representative called Panch.

#### **H. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

- The Gram Sabha consists of all the men and women who are 18 years of age and above. They meet at least twice a year. The Gram Sabha elects their representatives to the Gram Panchayat. The Gram Sabha has the power to review the work done by the Gram Panchayat and examine its account of expenditure.
- Gram Panchayat :** The head of the Gram Panchayat is the Sarpanch who is elected by the Gram Sabha members. They also elect the members who constitute the Gram Panchayat. The Panchayat area is called Panch. The Gram Panchayat is elected for a period of five years.
- The Gram Panchayat requires funds for undertaking measures to improve the life of villagers. It derives its income mainly from three sources. One part comes from taxes on houses, shops, fairs and purchase or sale of cattle and property. The state government provides funding to the Panchayat. Also, a small part of the funds comes from donations given by villagers for community development projects.
- There is one Nyaya Panchayat for every three or four villages. Each village Panchayat elects a member of the Nyaya Panchayat. The Nyaya Panchayat is headed by a



sarpanch. It hears minor civil and criminal cases.

**I. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The Panchayati Raj is a three-tier system. It works at three levels the Gram Panchayat at the village level, the Block Samiti (Panchayat Samiti) at the Block level and the Zila Parishad or Zila Panchayat at the district level. A few panchayats are combined to form a Block Samiti. A Block Samiti is the organisation formed to take care of the needs of the whole block.

However, there are certain things the Block Samiti also cannot handle by itself. The organization at the apex of the Panchayati Raj System called the Zila Parishad helps the Block Samitis. It consists of the representatives of the Block Samitis of the district and other members who work at the district level.

Zila Parishad (district level)

Panchayat Samiti (block level)

Gram Panchayat (village level)

The Indian Constitution allows each state to have their own laws for the Panchayats. The Panchayati Raj system upholds the democratic principle of our country which means that it is run as a government by the people, for the people and of the people even at the lowest levels.

2. The head of the Gram Panchayat is the Sarpanch who is elected by the Gram Sabha members. They also elect the members who constitute the Gram Panchayat. The Panchayat area is divided into wards and each ward elects a representative called panch (or the ward member). The Gram Panchayat is elected for a period of five years. The panchs and the Sarpanch from the Gram Panchayat hold their posts for a period of five years. In the Gram Panchayat, seats are reserved for members belonging to Scheduled Castes (SC) and Scheduled Tribes (ST).

The Gram Panchayat also has a Secretary who is also the Secretary of the Gram Sabha. He is not elected by the people but appointed by the government. He serves as a link between the people and the government.

3. The Gram Panchayat meets at regular intervals and looks after the implementation of the development programmes

and other issues. Its main duty is to improve the conditions of the village and villagers by providing basic amenities like roads, water, schools and electricity. Therefore, it has to handle construction and maintenance of roads, provide clean drinking water and water for irrigation. It also has to maintain records of births and deaths in the village. In addition to that, it has to look after the welfare of the people by providing reading rooms or libraries, organising fairs, maintaining water sources such as wells, ponds, etc. The Panchayat also has to execute schemes started by the state governments for generating employment in the villages. The Gram Panchayat is answerable to the Gram Sabha because its members have been elected by the Gram Sabha.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

5

## Rural Administration

### Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Patwari measures the land and maintain and update the records of the lands of villagers.
  2. He known as Patwari.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (iv)                      3. (iii)                      4. (i)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The Station House Officer is the full form of SHO.
  2. Tehsil manages all matters relating the land.
  3. Patwari is responsible for the collection of land revenue from the farmers.
  4. Patwari maintains and updates the records of the lands of villagers.

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. **SHO** is the incharge of a police station.
  2. The **updated** report the Patwari, gives information regarding the ownership.
  3. The states are divided into **districts**.

4. A **Hindu** law came into force from 9th September, 2005.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F):**

**Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. True                      4. False.

**F. Define the following :**

- Ans.**
1. **Tehsildar :** The District Magistrate, together with revenue officers (tehsildars), supervises the work of the patwaris. They ensure that records are maintained. Besides, they settle any disputes, generally at the tehsildar's office. In the tehsildar's office, land disputes are also heard. Farmers can obtain a copy of their land records together with the map, at times on payment of a small fee. In some states, records are being computerized and kept at the Panchayat office so that they are updated faster and the farmer can obtain them easily.
  2. **HSAA :** The Hindu Succession Amendment Act (HSAA), 2005 came into force 9th September 2005. It is a significant step towards advancing women's right.
  3. **Patwari :** Patwari measures the land and maintains and updates the records of the lands of villagers.
  4. **SHO :** The Station House Officer (SHO) is in charge of the police station. He is assisted in his work by a few constables and other officials.

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Jurisdiction means the system of justice in the country.
  2. Tehsildar is a revenue officer who supervises the work of the patwaris and revenue.
  3. HSA means the Hindu Succession Act, 1956.
  4. Patwari collects land revenue in a village.
  5. Indian women benefit from the law by the provision made for them.

**H. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. You have seen how the village moneylender and no intention of giving back the ownership papers of the mortgaged land to Ramnath, despite the latter's willingness to pay off his debt. In this case, the police when investigating the case, has to take help of the patwari. The patwari, who may be known by different names in different states, is responsible for measuring the land and maintaining and

updating the records of the lands of villagers.

2. Each police station has to maintain law and order in the area under its control. The people of that area report cases of burglary, accidents, quarrels, etc., to the police. The SHO is incharge of the police station and along with the police constables is responsible for investigating all such incidents and taking appropriate action.

All cases have to be registered first. This means that the person who is reporting the incident has to register a report at the police station. Then, the SHO takes up the case and starts the procedure by sending a constables to the relevant place to find out more information on any other action he may decide upon.

3. The Patwari prepares a map of the village which gives detailed information about the owner of each plot of land, its size, whether it is rented to some other person (if it is, then that person's name and amount of rent received by the owner), the area on which crops are grown, the area which is kept follow, the kind of crops grown and so on. The details corresponding to the map are maintained in the records kept by the patwari. Looking at records, the patwari knows who owns the plot of land and who mortgaged it to whom. Thus, he would be able to help Ramnath.

The patwari measures the plots of land, by various means, such as using chains to measure the fields. The patwari also has the duty of collecting land revenue from the farmers. So, it is necessary that his records have to be regularly updated. Farmers may change the area of crops grown on their fields or may dig a well or give a part of their plot on rent. Sometimes a farmer may buy a plot of land or divide his land among his children. All such changes have to be recorded.

4. The Hindu Sucession Amendment Act (HSAA), 2005 came into force from 9th September, 2005. It is a significant step towards advancing women's rights. In its essence, the Act has been enforced to remove gender discriminatory provisions in the Hindu Succession Act (HSA), 1956. Under the USA, the Hindu son was born with a right to ancestral property. With the coming into force of the amended act, the Hindu daughter would be borne with the same sight to

ancestral property. Thus, the HSAA has abolished the difference between sons and daughters in the right to ancestral property.

Till recently, in many states of our country, Hindu women did not get a share in their father's or ancestor's land. However, with HSAA sons, daughters and their mother get an equal share in the agricultural land. The government has ensured that this law is enforced by all the states and union territories of our country.

For centuries, women, who have worked along with their husbands and brothers in the fields, helping them with the cultivation, harvesting and all other work associated with agriculture, have been denied the right to inherit a share in the father's property. Now, under the new law, finally women have got their due.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Urban Administration

### Exercise

#### **B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

**Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (ii)                      3. (ii)

#### **A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Income tax, sale tax, property tax, entertainment tax and house tax.
  2. We pay entertainment tax while buying a ticket for a movie.

#### **C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. The Municipal Corporation.
  2. The Commissioner administrative the activities and function of the Municipal Corporation.
  3. The Ward councillor elect Mayor and Deputy Mayor.

#### **D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. Cities are divided into many **wards**.
  2. The **sanitation** engineer looks after the cleanliness of the Wards.

3. Municipal elections are held every **five** years.
4. When we buy a ticket for an amusement park we have to pay an **entertainment** tax.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. The Municipal Corporation**

As said that cities are much larger than villages. They have many more people, busier roads, more crowded markets etc. While cities have more hospitals, schools, parks and other such amenities, they face many problems, too.

The Municipal Corporation look after the civic amenities in cities. This body is responsible for providing clean drinking water, keeping the city clean, planting trees, lighting the streets, sanitation and many other tasks. It also puts up signs in various places to inform people about disease such as dengue, malaria, etc. and how they can be prevented.

2. Each city is divided into wards and each ward elects a member called Ward Councillor.
3. The Commissioners and other administrative staff are appointed by the government to implement the decisions, taken by the councillors.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Functions**

The work of the Corporation is done by various departments, who look after water, electricity, roads, sanitation, schools and so on. Many people are employed by the Corporation to look after the smooth and efficient functioning of the various departments.

The various functions of a Municipal Corporation can be grouped into four categories :

- Civic amenities like supply of water, maintenance of roads, etc.
- Public education like running primary and secondary schools, etc.
- Public health like running hospitals and dispensaries, organising vaccination programmes, etc.
- Public security like registration of births and deaths, maintaining fire-fighting services etc.
- However, these days the Commissioners of many corporations across our country are saving money by

hiring private contractors for various activities. This is called sub-contracting. Thus, the work of the municipalities that was previously performed by workers appointed by the government is now done, by the workers appointed by private companies.

**2. Working of Municipal Corporation**

Each city is divided into wards and each ward elects a member called Ward Councillor. People cast their votes and elect representatives from each ward. The number of members elected depends upon the size of the population of the city. While one-third of the seats are reserved for women, some seats are also reserved for members belonging to Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes.

It is the ward councillors who decide on what measures are needed to improve the facilities provided, or whether to introduce new and better amenities and other such issues.

The elected members or the councillors also elect a Mayor and a Deputy Mayor. The Mayor is the political executive of the Corporation, i.e., she/he belongs to a political party. They are elected for one year, but can be re-elected. The Mayor presides over the meetings of the Corporation but in his absence, the Deputy Mayor performs his functions.

There are various committees that look after different issues. The councillors decide on issues such as where a hospital should be built or where a flyover is required. The Municipal Corporation has a Commissioner, appointed by the state government. He supervises the working of the corporation.

First a budget is prepared. The amount of money to be spent on various tasks is decided. The councillors place the demands or problems of the people in their wards before the Municipal Council. Then, the councillors discuss all the issues. Thereafter, the decisions are made and implemented by the administrative staff.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Oral Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The middle farmers have land between 2 to 5 hectares.
  2. Livelihood refers to occupation, an employment, which is necessary to provide oneself with basic needs.

**B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (iii)    2. (ii)    3. (iii)

**C. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.**
1. Agriculture.
  2. Blacksmith.
  3. The carpenter makes doors, windows, chairs, tables and stools, etc.
  4. **Name of three divisions of Urban occupations :**  
(i) Factory workers                      (ii) Businessmen  
(iii) Professionals (teachers, doctors, lawyers, etc.)

**D. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. A **large scale** farmer owns land above 5 hectares.
  2. Farming is the chief occupation of **villagers**.
  3. **Weavers** makes garments for the people.
  4. A painter is engaged in **self** employment.

**E. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

- Ans.** 1. True    2. False    3. False    4. False

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Different types of people live in a village and they have different types of livelihoods. Agriculture is the chief occupation of the villagers. They are mostly farmers. There are, however, other people who follow different occupations. There are shopkeepers, blacksmiths, carpenters, weavers, potters, barbers, etc. All of them form the village community.
  2. **The Carpenter**  
The Carpenter is also an important member of the village community. He makes different things of wood like doors, windows, chairs, tables and stools, etc. He makes the



wooden plough and the wooden cart.

3. **Primary occupation :** Such occupation in which people are engaged in driving useful goods from natural resources are called primary occupations. Agriculture, forestry, cattle-rearing, dairy farming, fishing, mining etc., are some such occupations.
4. **Tertiary Occupations**  
The third type of occupations are the tertiary occupations in which no goods are produced but people offer their services or expertise. People engaged in teaching, banking, railways, post offices, etc., are all engaged in tertiary occupations.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Types of Livelihoods in Urban Areas**

In urban areas (big cities and towns) different types of people reside and they practise different types of livelihoods.

Factory workers, businessmen, shopkeepers, professionals (like teachers, doctors, lawyers, etc.) are the main people who reside in the cities and towns. There are, however, other people who follow different kinds of professions. They include vegetable vendors, domestic servants, garment workers, and bank employees etc.

- (i) Factory workers form a substantial part of the urban population. They are employed in different factories where they work day and night and produce various things of daily use such as cloth, hosiery articles, medicines, chemicals, etc.
- (ii) Shopkeepers and businessman are busy in buying and selling different types of things from bread, butter, vegetables, fruits, food grains, sweets, groceries to books and stationery.
- (iii) Professionals like teachers, doctors, lawyers, bank employees, clerks, postman, policeman also form a major part of the urban population. They serve the society in their own way.

Teachers and professors educate the students and enlighten them. Doctors work in hospitals and dispensaries and cure the people of their illness. The bank employees look into various money transaction jobs. The policeman helps in

maintaining law and order in the cities and towns.

Besides the above people there are some other people who reside with urban areas such as vegetable vendors, domestic servants, garment workers, etc. The vegetable vendors move from street to street and supply fruits and vegetables to citizens at their door-step.

2. Movement of a large number of people from one place to another is called migration. Due to lack of employment facilities in rural areas, many villagers migrate to neighbouring towns and cities. This links rural and urban lives. Such migration of rural folks to urban areas leads to the over-crowding of cities thereby creating unsanitary conditions there. But it has certain advantages of its own. It leads to the prosperity of both the rural and urban people. The rural people can send their incomes to dependents living in the village and the urban people can expand their business with the help of rural labour. Thus the rural people save their families from starvation and the urban people increase their production with easily available labour.

Activity/Project

**Ans.** Do yourself.

### Exercise

#### B. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the right answer :

Ans. 1. (ii)                      2. (i)                      3. (iv)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

Ans. 1. Abiotic                      2. land, air and water                      3. Herbivores  
4. energy                      5. environment

#### C. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :

Ans. 1. True                      2. True                      3. False                      4. True

#### D. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans. 1. Biotic components include living world, i.e. plant and animal kingdom including man.  
Abiotic components are referred to as physical or non-living which include land, air and water.
2. The four domains of the Earth which jointly support life are hydrosphere, lithosphere, atmosphere and biosphere. Each domain has its own impact on the whole environment.
3. The plants prepare their food in the presence of the Sun by taking nutrients and water from soil and carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. That is why they are called producers. Plants are vital for the existences of animal kingdom including man. It fulfils their requirements of food, clothing and industrial raw materials for man. The plant kingdom supports animal kingdom.
4. **Herbivores** : Herbivores are the plant-eating animals such as goats, deer, buffaloes, elephants, rhinoceros, etc. Herbivores are large in number and reproduce faster. They are animals of prey and first level consumers.  
**Carnivores** : Carnivores are flesh-eating animals, e.g., lions, tigers, leopards, wolves, etc. They eat herbivores, e.g.,

goat, deer, etc. They are predators. They have sharp teeth and claws and reproduce at slower rate. Carnivores are second level consumers. They keep the number of herbivores under control by hunting them. If they do not hunt them, herbivorous animals will increase and harm the plant kingdom.

5. The environment built by man is known as the man-made environment. It may include agriculture, buildings, roads, etc. It is dependent upon man.

**D. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Literally, environment means surroundings or conditions under which a person or a thing exists and develops his/its characteristics. For example, the environment of a plant refers to all those conditions which help the growth of that particular plant. But the environment is not the same everywhere, it varies from place to place. It comprises of biotic and abiotic components.
  2. Ecology is the study of interrelationship between living organisms and the environment.
  3. Do it yourself
  4. Do it yourself
  5. Do it yourself

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

2

## The Earth's Interior and Its Material

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (iv)                      2. (ii)                      3. (i).

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. The Earth is a **dynamic** planet.
  2. WE cannot reach to the **centre** of the earth.
  3. The innermost layer is also known as **NIFE**.
  4. Minerals comprise of **chemical** compositions and **physical** attributes.

5. Rocks are widely used in the construction of **roads** and **buildings**.

**C. Distinguish between the followings :**

**Ans.**

1. The deposition of broken rock materials in the layers form the sedimentary rocks.  
The metamorphic rocks are formed due to excessive heat pressure inside the Earth.
2. The igneous rocks are formed by the cooling of molten magma.  
The deposition of broken rock materials in the layers form the sedimentary rocks.

**D. Define the following terms :**

**Ans.**

1. **Minerals** : Minerals are the substances which occur naturally in rocks.
2. **Magma** : The molten material inside the Earth is called magma.
3. **SIAL** : The main elements of the crust are silicon, aluminium and magnesium (SIAL).

**E. Short Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The crust is the solid outer layer of the Earth. It is also known as the lithosphere. The crust has the following characteristics :
  - (i) It is made up of many kinds of rocks.
  - (ii) The thickness of the crust varies from about 16 km to 60 km.
  - (iii) The crust is thicker on the continents than on the ocean floor.
  - (iv) The average density is less than 3 but it increases with increasing depth.
  - (v) The main elements of the crust are silicon, aluminium and magnesium (SIAL).
2. Rocks are grouped into three categories on the basis of the manner of formation. These can be listed as igneous, sedimentary, and metamorphic rocks.
  1. Igneous Rocks
  2. Sedimentary Rocks
  3. Metamorphic Rocks
3. On the basis of varying density and other physical and chemical properties of the Earth's material, the Earth is roughly divided into three concentric layers-crust, mantle and core.

4. The word 'igneous' is derived from the Latin word 'ignis' meaning fire. The molten material inside the Earth is called magma. Magma flows out in the form of molten lava in a volcanic eruption. So when this molten material solidifies the rock formed are igneous. They are very hard. Majority of rocks available in the Earth belong to this category. Instances of igneous rocks are basalt, dolerite and granite. These rocks provide buildings materials. Igneous rocks are even formed when the magma solidifies within the crust. Igneous rocks are of two types.

**Intrusive igneous rocks :** Rocks formed within the Earth.

**Extrusive igneous rocks :** Rocks which are formed on the surface of the Earth when molten lava on the surface solidifies.

5. **Rocks Cycle :** The pre-existing rocks undergo a cycle of change due to changing weather conditions and forces of nature like wind, rivers, glaciers, volcanic activity and the Earth movements. The rocks are continuously being formed, destroyed and reformed.

Igneous and metamorphic rocks when break and decay, form materials for sedimentary rocks.

When sedimentary and metamorphic rocks are exposed to tremendous heat and pressure, or contacted with lava, it can change into igneous rocks. Igneous and sedimentary rocks which are subjected to extreme heat or pressure will form metamorphic rocks. Hence, this cycle of change from one type of rock to another is called rock cycle.

**F. Answer the following questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The surface of the Earth is covered both by land and water. About one-third (about 29%) of the Earth's surface is covered by land while the rest (about 71%) is covered by water. Again, land and water are not evenly distributed around the Earth. While looking at the map of continents and oceans of the world, one can easily judge that the Northern Hemisphere has more of land while the Southern Hemisphere has more of water surface.
2. The temperature inside the Earth increases with increase in depth. It is estimated to be about 5000°C at the centre of the Earth.

- the interior of the Earth is not composed of the same material ;
- the density of the Earth's material increases gradually from the surface towards the centre.

On the basis of varying density and other physical and chemical properties of the Earth's material, the Earth is roughly divided into three concentric layers—crust, mantle and core.

3. Below the crust of the Earth lies a very thick layer called the mantle. The mantle has the following characteristics:
  - It is made up of dense and heavy materials.
  - It extends up to an average depth of about 2900 km.
  - The temperature of this layer is between 900 °C to 2200 °C.
  - The average density of the mantle varies from about 3.5 to 5.5 g/cc.
  - The main elements of the mantle are silicon and magnesium (SIMA).
  - Very hot rocks normally form magma in this layer.
4. The crust is the solid outer layer of the Earth. It is also known as the lithosphere. The crust has the following characteristics.
5. Do it yourself

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

3

## Changing Faces of the Earth

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

Ans. 1. (iv)    2. (i)    3. (iv)

#### 2. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.
1. **Exogenic** forces originate on Earth and form new **changes** on the earth surface.
  2. **Vertical** movement which causes land to uplift or subside or both.

3. The study of **earthquake** shocks and its affects is called seismology.
4. Volcanoes erupt due to excessive **heat** and **pressure** inside the earth.

**D. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Various processes changing the surface of the earth day in and day out. These changes take place every minute.

The Earth's surface is not uniform. The lithosphere comprises of several plates known as 'lithospheric plates'. The theory of plate tectonic has recently replaced the theory of continental drift.

Lithosphere plates are made of small and big plates consisting of continents and ocean basins. The forces generated in the interior of the Earth are called internal processes or endogenic forces while the forces operating on the Earth's surface are called external processes of exogenic forces. Internal processes lead to sudden and abrupt changes like earthquakess and volcanic eruption. External processes bring about slow changes extending over millions of years like action of river, sea waves, ice and wind.

2. Lithosphere plates are made of small and big plates consisting of continents and ocean basins. The forces generated in the interior of the Earth are called internal processes or endogenic forces while the forces operating on the Earth's surface are called external processes of exogenic forces. Internal processes lead to sudden and abrupt changes like earthquakess and volcanic eruption. External processes bring about slow changes extending over millions of years like action of river, sea waves, ice and wind.

3. The map of world is like a Jigsaw puzzle. If you see it carefully continents and islands fit into other. This phenomenon was first observed by a German scientist Alfred Wegener.

According to him, millions of years ago single vast continental 'Pangaea' existed. Pangaea broke into pieces due to internal force. These pieces started drifting away from each other about 250 millions years ago.

The two major landmasses Laurasia in north and Gondwanaland south were separated from each other by a



narrow, elongated a shallow sea called 'Tethys Sea'. However, the size of Tethys Sea keep decreasing due to drifting of these landmasses towards each other and helped in the formation of Himalayas.

American continents further drifted towards west and form Atlantic Ocean. Thus, Wegener's theory is referred to as Continents Drift Theory. This theory has been replaced by much more scientific theory, i.e., Plate Tectonic Theory.

**Continental Drift Theory :** According to this theory, millions of years ago single vast continental 'Pangaea' existed. Pangaea broke into pieces due to internal force. These pieces started drifting away from each other part 250 million years ago.

**Plate Tectonic Theory :** According to this theory, the continental blocks or plates are floating on mantle layer. They move with the change or release of pressure and temperature from inside the Earth.

4. Earthquakes are terrible disasters that cause massive devastation all around. Whenever an earthquake occurs, the ground shakes. Along with the ground, buildings shake and cracks develop on the walls of houses. A strong earthquake can cause buildings to collapse, topple chimneys causing fire, snap electric wires and water mains. Earthquakes are very common in some parts of India.

We live on the top surface of the Earth called the crust. But, deep below the earth it is very hot. The crust of the Earth has cracks in it called the faults. The land on each side of a fault can move as it floats on molten rocks. The moving Landmasses sometimes bump against each other causing the land to shake. This results in an earthquake.

### **C. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The point of origin of an earthquake is called its seismic focus.
  2. A sea cliff the steep rock made by the waves of sea water.
  3. The flood plains are formed due to the flow of rivers.
  4. Around the Pacific Ocean along a belt of volcanoes called Ring of Fire.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i)                                      2. (iv)                                      3. (iv)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The air in the atmosphere is a **mixture** of many gases.  
2. The air has about **78** per cent of nitrogen and **21** per cent oxygen.  
3. The density of the air is highest near the **earth's surface**.  
4. The upper limit of the troposphere is called **topopause**.  
5. Large jet planes normally fly in the **Stratosphere**.  
6. **Troposphere** layer has the lowest temperature in the atmosphere.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

- Ans.** 1. False                                      2. True                                      3. True  
4. True                                      5. False                                      6. False.

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. The gaseous envelope of air which surrounds the Earth from all sides is called atmosphere.  
2. Weather is the condition of atmosphere at a particular place and time. It can be sunny, cloudy, rainy, humid, warm or cold.  
3. **Mesosphere** : Above the stratosphere from 50 km to 80 km is mesosphere. The temperature again starts to drop and can be 100°C at the Mesopause separates it from ionosphere.  
4. **Precipitation** : Precipitation coming down to the Earth in liquid form is known as rain.  
5. **Five layers of atmosphere :**  
1. Troposphere      2. Stratosphere  
3. Mesosphere      4. Thermosphere      5. Exosphere  
6. **Cyclonic Rainfall**

Cyclones are the centres of low pressure. When the air converges from all directions towards the low pressure, it is forced to rise up.

Rain even comes in the form of snow, sleet and hail. Rainfall

is very essential for the survival of plants and animals. It brings fresh water to the Earth's surface. If there is no rainfall, there be water scarcity and drought. On the other hand if the rainfall is in excess, floods take place.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Our Earth is surrounded by a layer of atmosphere.  
The gaseous envelope of air which surrounds the Earth from all sides is called atmosphere. The presence of the atmosphere makes the Earth a unique planet in the solar system. The atmosphere extends upto a height of at least 1600 km above the surface of the Earth. Around 99% of the total mass of the atmosphere is found within 32 km from the surface of the Earth. The air is denser near the Earth's surface and gets thinner as one goes upwards. Though the atmosphere is invisible to us, its continuations cause changes in the weather and climate. These changes influence our day-to-day life.
2. The air in the atmosphere is a mixture of many gases, in varying proportions. The composition is not constant and varies not only from time to time but also from place to place. The main features of the composition of the atmosphere are as under :  
The composition of the atmosphere (dry air) is fairly uniform upto a height of about 6 km.  
The two main gases in the atmosphere are nitrogen (about 78%) and oxygen (about 21%).
3. Atmosphere has the following uses :
  - (i) The lower layers of the atmosphere has oxygen which sustains life on the Earth.
  - (ii) Nitrogen and carbon dioxide are useful for plants to make food.
  - (iii) The atmosphere creates a blanket around the Earth (greenhouse effect) that help to maintain a temperature suitable for the existence of life.
  - (iv) It saves the Earth from the harmful ultraviolet rays from the Sun.
4. **Stratosphere**  
Next to troposphere is stratosphere extending from 15 km to 50 km.

This layer is free from changes, cloud formation and dust particles etc. Hence stratosphere is ideal for air transport. Stratosphere has the presence of a layer ozone gas at around 25 km of height absorbs harmful ultraviolet rays.

Temperature increases in this layer.

Stratosphere forms a boundary between stratosphere and mesosphere.

5. **Mesosphere** : Above the stratosphere from 50 km to 80 km is mesosphere.

The temperature again starts to drop and can be 100°C at the Mesopause separates it from ionosphere.

### **Thermosphere**

Above the mesosphere is thermosphere which extends from 80 km to 400 km above the earth's surface.

It contains electrically charged particles called ions which are maximum at 250 km of height.

Ionosphere is a part of this layer.

It protects the Earth from harmful radiation. This causes increase in temperature with height in this layer.

6. **1. Convictional Rainfall**

When the air comes in contact with the hot surface of the Earth, it gets heated, becomes lighter and starts rising up, forming convectional currents.

- 2. Orographic Rainfall**

When the relief features, such as mountains come in the way of a moist wind, then the wind is forced to rise up the mountain. These clouds then bring rainfall largely on the windward side.

- 3. Cyclonic Rainfall**

Cyclones are the centres of low pressure. When the air converges from all directions towards the low pressure, it is forced to rise up.

Rain even comes in the form of snow, sleet and hail. Rainfall is very essential for the survival of plants and animals. It brings fresh water to the Earth's surface. If there is no rainfall, there be water scarcity and drought. On the other hand if the rainfall is in excess, floods take place.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.



Fresh water lakes	0.009
Inland seas and salt lakes	0.009
Atmosphere	0.0019
Rivers	0.0001
Total	100.0000

Water is an essential source for survival. It quenches our thirst and thus we should use it as a precious resource where 97% of the water is in the form of seas and oceans while only 3% is in the form of rivers, lakes, etc. Thus only 3% freshwater is present on the Earth viewing from the space, the Earth seems to be shining with a bluish tinge due to the presence of water. Due to this, Earth is even known as a “blue planet” or “watery planet”, The world water day is celebrated on 22nd March every year.

**D. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.**
- 1. Spring tides :** If the Sun, the moon and the Earth come in one line, as seen on a new moon or a full moon night, the tides become higher. These tides are called spring tides.
  - 2. Salinity :** Water of oceans is saline while that of rivers is fresh. Water of oceans and seas is saline due to presence of salts in water. The quantity of salt dissolved in the water is called salinity. Normal salinity of the seawater is 35 gm of salt dissolved in 1000 gm water. This quality of salt in the seas is due to rocks present in them and mineral powers brought by rivers.  
Salinity of the seas is affected by addition of fresh water, rate of evaporation and ocean currents. Salinity is maximum in the sea/oceans located near tropic of cancer and tropic of capricorn because the number of rivers and incidence of rain is low in these areas but temperature is generally high.
  - 3. Currents :** It is a movement of oceanic waters flow continuously, constantly and in a fixed direction on the surface or sub-surface of the ocean. Currents are created only in those areas, which are under the influence of permanent winds. These currents flow in the direction of the winds. Besides winds, factors like rotation of the Earth, rain evaporation, pressure gradient, gravitational pull, difference in temperature, pressure gradient, salinity also cause currents.

The influence of currents force water of the oceans to move from one place to another.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. All the water bodies on the Earth's surface, namely, oceans, seas, lakes, rivers, together with snow and ice, are collectively called the hydrosphere.
2. Of all the planets it is only the Earth which has a hydrosphere. That is why the Earth is known as the 'Watery Planet'.
3. Water of oceans a saline while that of rivers is fresh. Water of oceans and seas is saline due to presence of salts in water. The quantity of salt dissolved in the water is called salinity. Normal salinity of the seawater is 35 gm of salt dissolved in 1000 gm water. This quality of salt in the seas is due to rocks present in them and mineral powers brought by rivers.

**4. Tides**

The Sun and the moon exert a strong gravitational force on the Earth. The strength of this force creates a regular rise and fall of water in oceans. This rise and fall of water is called a tide. An increase in the level of water is called a high tide. The fall in its level is called a low tide.

If the Sun, the moon and the Earth come in one line, as seen on a new moon or a full moon night, the tides become higher. These tides are called spring tides. Even on half-moon nights, the Sun and the moon create a right angle with the centre of the Earth. The gravitational forces, thus, gets balanced and the tides are not so high. These tides are called neap tides.

5. Tsunami (pronounced soo-nah-mee) is a Japanese word made of two parts Tsu meaning harbour and nami meaning a long wave. Thus, Tsunami means long waves striking the harbour.

But actually a Tsunami is nothing less than a monster that speeds across the sea as fast as a jet aeroplane. Usually an intense earthquake starts the Tsunami waves which start falling across the sea. When the ocean is deep tsunami can travel unnoticed on the surface at a speed more than 500 miles (or 800 kilometres) per hour crossing the vast oceans in a day or less. In some places, the Tsunamis may rise to a

few feet but at other places they may surge vertically as high as 10 feet (or 30 metres) and above.

A tsunami is not a single wave but a series of waves, better known as a wave train. The first wave in tsunami may not necessarily be the most destructive. Once the tsunami reaches the shallow water of the coast, it is slowed down. But when waves after waves rush towards the coast and the top of the wave, moves faster than the bottom, the whole sea rises the wave, moves faster than the bottom, the whole sea rises dramatically. With much fuss and fume, there is much underwater turbulence sucking everything under and tossing heavy objects around.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

1. Water moves continuously between hydrosphere, lithosphere and atmosphere. This never ending movement of water is never static and exists in dynamic condition changing its form and place. Hence, this circulation of water from hydrosphere to atmosphere and atmosphere to lithosphere and back to oceans is called hydrological cycle.

2. Do yourself

3. **Currents** : It is a movement of oceanic waters flow continuously, constantly and in a fixed direction on the surface or sub-surface of the ocean. Currents are created only in those areas, which are under the influence of permanent winds. These currents flow in the direction of the winds. Besides winds, factors like rotation of the Earth, rain evaporation, pressure gradient, gravitational pull, difference in temperature, pressure gradient, salinity also cause currents.

The influence of currents force water of the oceans to move from one place to another.

There are two types of ocean currents :

(a) Warm Ocean Currents      (b) Cold Ocean Currents.

(a) **Warm Ocean Currents** : The ocean currents flowing from warm areas of tropical oceans towards the cold areas of temperate and sub-polar zones are called warm ocean currents. Their temperature is higher than surrounding waters.



- (b) **Cold Ocean Currents** : Temperature of these ocean currents is cooler. They flow from cold polar oceanic waters to warm tropical regions.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Natural Vegetation and Wildlife

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

**Ans.** 1. (iv)                                  2. (iii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. **Python, hippopotamus, crocodile, snake** are the native animals of **tropical rain** forest.  
2. Rainfall is not enough in the **savana** for the growth.  
3. Forests grow well in **warm** and **humid** climate.

**C. Define the following :**

- Ans.** 1. **Temperate Evergreen Forests**

**Location :**

These are located in the eastern margins of the continents in south China, south-eastern USA, south-eastern Brazil, Uruguay of, etc.

**Climatic Condition :**

Rainy climate throughout the year with cool winters.

**Characteristics :**

- These are the mixed forests with hardwood trees. The timber of these forests is valuable.
  - The lowlands have generally mixed forests of coniferous and deciduous varieties while the highlands have only coniferous trees.
  - The main trees found are oak, pine, wattle, eucalyptus, etc. These are evergreen trees.
  - The main animals are sheep and cattle which are good for wool and meat.
2. **Temperate Deciduous Forests**

**Location :**

Found in northeastern parts of USA, China, Japan and New Zealand.

**Climatic Condition :**

Rainfall is moderate. Winters are cool.

**Characteristics :**

Trees shed leaves in autumn season and remain leafless throughout winter.

The common trees found are oak, ash, beech, etc. in this region.

**Wildlife :**

Animals like foxes, wolves, deer are common. Birds like monals and pheasants are also found here.

**3. Grasslands**

In some regions where the amount of precipitation is not enough for the growth of large trees, the natural vegetation consists mainly of grasses. The deep and extensive root system of grass is able to absorb water from the soil even in the dry months. Also the thin blades of grass conserve water by reducing transpiration. A region whose dominant vegetation is grasses is called grassland. Shrubs and small trees may also be found in grasslands.

Classified on the basis of latitude, grasslands are of two main types :

1. Tropical grasslands or savannas.
2. Temperate grasslands of steppes.

**4. Desert**

A large area that supports only sparse vegetation because of extreme dryness or extreme cold is called a desert. Broadly speaking, deserts are of two types—hot deserts and cold deserts.

Vegetation in tropical deserts

Vegetation in tundra regions.

**D.****Short Answer Questions:**

1. The plant cover on the surface of the Earth, which is found in nature or grows naturally and not due to the human activities is called the natural vegetation.
2. A large area in which trees are the dominant vegetation is known as a forest.
3. These forests are found in Northern Australia and central America. Found on the eastern slopes of the Western Ghats, in Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, West Odisha, Siwaliks in the

North India.

4. Animals commonly found are caribou, walrus, penguin, polar bear, musk ox, wolf etc. Due to stagnating water in depression different types of birds feed on the insects.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

1. Do it yourself
2. Do it yourself
3.
  - Plants in desert are scarce, but adapted to extreme drought conditions by developing succulent stems and long roots and leaves are reduced to spines.
  - Nature is very bountiful. At some places, oases are found due to availability of water as forms of rivers, springs etc. There are date palms surrounding them.
  - A treeless region, as trees do not grow at temperature below 10°C.
  - Mostly mosses, lichens and some shrubs grow.
  - Sparse vegetation.
4. Do yourself

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

7

## Human Environment—Settlement and Means of Transport and Communication

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (iii)                      3. (i)                      4. (i).

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. The river valley civilisation of **Indus**, and **Nile** are famous in history.
  2. Settlement can even be classified as **rural** and **urban**.
  3. Mining towns are found in large mining areas like **Khetri** in Rajasthan.
  4. The villagers adjust their cropping patterns as per the need of the **occupation**.
  5. Railways are the **swiftest** means of transport.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. False

4. True                      5. True                      6. False.

**D. Distinguish between the following :**

- Ans.**
1. Rural settlements may be dwellings for village around agricultural land, pastures or mining regions.  
Urban settlements are much bigger in size as composed to rural settlements. They have compact structure and abundance of amenities like schools, hospitals, banks, etc.
  2. Roads comprise of the fastest means of transport for short distances. The means of road transport are car, truck and train.  
The water transport comprises inland waterways and ocean routes. Boats and steamers are used for transporting cargo and passengers. Ships are used for a long distance.

**E. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.**
1. **Radial pattern :** Radial settlements develop when streets radiate from a common point in all directions. The construction of houses and other units are along the streets only.
  2. **Religious Town :** There towns are the epicenter of religious activities like Haridwar in India, Mecca in Saudi Arabia, etc.
  3. **Waterways :** The water transport comprises inland waterways and ocean routes. Inlands Waterways : Navigable rivers, lakes and canals constitute inland waterways. Boats and steamers are used for transporting cargo and passengers. The Great lakes between USA and Canada, along with the St. Lawrence waterway in the world. Large rivers like the Nile, the Amazon, the Mississippi and the Yangtze are very useful inland waterway because they provide interconnected network of inland waterway. The important canals of the world are the Suez, the Panama, the Kiel, etc.  
Ocean routes the transportations of materials and passengers is cheaper and easier through ocean routes. The investment is needed only for the development of port.
  4. **Mass Media :** With the help of newspaper, radio, and television with an communicate with a large number of people. They are thus know as mass media.

**F. Give reasons :**

- Ans.**
1. There is no competition between a village and a town.

Actually both of them are dependent on each other. The villages supply foodgrains, fruits, vegetables, other agricultural raw materials and casual workers required in the towns. The towns supply industrial goods needed in the villages.

2. Railways are cheaper than airways because train consume less petroleum and maintenance than aeroplane.
3. It is the fastest and costliest means of transport which is comfortable too. It connects far-flung, remotest and inaccessible areas. During man-made and natural emergencies like wars, earthquakes, epidemics, floods and drought etc. airways play a significant role.  
For managing air transport, airports are required. Airports require elaborate arrangements for landing, take off, fuelling, passenger and cargo etc. Some important destinations are London, New York, Paris, Washington, Los Angeles, Chicago, Tokyo Singapore, Rome, New Delhi, Mumbai etc. These are some of the busy airports of the world.
4. Science has introduced new technologies in making advanced engines so it revolutionised transports and communication.

**G. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Settlements are places where human beings build their houses. There are two types of settlements today :  
1. Rural Settlements                      2. Urban Settlements.
2. Scattered Pattern are found in hilly or forested regions. The space between dwelling, therefore, depends on the amount of land required to grow enough food.
3. **Some Important ocean routes :**
  - (i) The north Atlantic rough connection the eastern USA and Western Europe is the busiest ocean route in the world.
  - (ii) The Mediterranean and Indian Ocean is also one of the important trade route, which connects industrially advanced countries of Europe with East Africa, South Asia and far middle East.
  - (iii) The cape route between western Europe and far Middle East, Australia and New Zealand; before the construction of Suez between Western Europe and Eastern South America;

North Pacific between Western coast of North America and Japan.

(iv) The other important and Eastern South America; North Pacific between Western coast of North America and Japan.

**4. The Four types of transport :**

(i) Roads (ii) Railways  
(iii) Waterways (iv) Airways.

5. Do yourself.

6. Roads comprise of the fastest means of transport for short distance.

7. Air transport is the fastest means of transport which is comfortable too but it is costliest means of transportation.

**H. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

**1. Communication**

Communication is the process of transmitting a message to the other. With advancement in technology human being have devised new and rapid means of communication. The transformation in the field of communication has led to an information revolution in the world. Different modes of communication are being used to provide information, to educate as well as to entertain. With the help of newspapers, radio and television we can communicate with a large number of people. They are thus known as mass media. The satellites have made communication even faster. Satellites help in exploration of oil, survey of forecast underground water, mineral wealth, weather forecast and disaster warning. Now we make use of electronic mails or e-mails through Internet, Wireless telephonic communications through cellular phones.

**2. Modes of Transportation**

**Transport**

In olden times, man travelled from one place to another on foot. He carried loads on his head, shoulder, back or dragged them with a rope. Later, man started riding and carrying his goods on animals like elephants, horses, oxen etc. After the wheel was invented, they made carts that were pulled by animals. As the time passed he learnt to make different types of wheels and designed different means of transport to suit his needs.

With time, modern means of transport evolved. Today, the four modes of transport available to us are roadways, railways, waterways and airways.

### **Roads**

Roads comprise of the fastest means of transport for short distances. The introduction of motor cars and trucks has revolutionised the road traffic. A truck can reach in the interiors of the city. The highways are the roads, used for high speed traffic. Eastern United States and Western Europe have the denser network of highways in the world. European Russia has denser road network than the Asiatic Russia. China, in the eastern and southern parts, have a dense network of all-weather roads. The density of roads in India is lowest in the world.

### **Railways**

Railways are the swiftest means of transport and can handle more load in comparison to roads.

Railways are the true lifeline of a country as they transport a large volume of freight and passengers over longer distances. Railways strengthen and integrate the nation socially, economically and politically. They help in connecting producing areas with consuming areas thus enhancing trade in the country. In fact, invention of rail engine during industrial revolution is responsible for the dispersal of economic development.

For better connectivity and for mass movement of people in large cities like London, New York, Kolkata and Delhi the metro railway system is providing a good means of transport. Metros help in decongesting cities and provide clean travel. For speedy rail transport, steam engines are replaced by electric engines. They are eco-friendly, pollution-free, fuel-efficient and faster.

Some factors for the development of rail transport are given below :

- (a) Relief of landforms
- (b) Population concentration
- (c) Presence of resources
- (d) Level of economic and technological development.

The plain surfaces with concentration of activities

supporting vast population have double or multiple tracks of railways. However, vast desert lands, mountain regions and sparse population restrict rail development. Countries of Africa also lack funds besides the above mentioned factors. India is the fourth largest railway network in the world. In initial stage, rails were developed by British in India. But later, further development, improvement and expansion were contributed by Indian government only.

### 3. **Urban Settlements**

Urban settlements are much bigger in size as compared to rural settlements. They have compact structure and abundance of amenities like schools, hospitals, banks, etc.

The urban patterns are classified as under :

- (i) **Administrative Towns** : Major activities in such towns are usually with the administration of the region. For example, Washington DC and New Delhi are the capital cities and administrative hubs of their countries.
- (ii) **Defence Towns** : These towns are centres of military activities and often used as house of army establishment. Jalandhar is a famous defence town of India.
- (iii) **Cultural Towns** : The towns known for art, culture and education are cultural towns like Shantiniketan in West Bengal.
- (iv) **Mining Towns** : These towns are found in large mining areas like Khetri in Rajasthan.
- (v) **Religious Towns** : These towns are the epicenter of religious activities like Haridwar in India, Mecca in Saudi Arabia, etc.
- (vi) **Market Towns** : These towns are meeting point for exchange of goods and services. For example, Chicago in USA.

### 4. **Types of Settlements :**

- 1. **Compact Pattern** : Houses are built close to each other around a centre (nucleus). Such pattern is found in fertile plains or near the river banks.
- 2. **Scattered Pattern** : They are found in hilly or forested regions. The space between each dwelling, therefore, depends on the amount of land required to grow enough food. Thus, only a few houses can be built closer together.



- They are thus far apart or on different levels.
3. Linear settlements develop along a road, a rivers or a canal. They generally have rows of houses facing each other. The fishing villages in the coastal areas also look like linear settlements.
  4. Circular settlements generally develop in flat level areas, around a pond, tank or a lake. The village tank not only provides water, material for building huts and houses but also is a centre of all activities.
  5. Radial settlements develop when streets radiate from a common point in all directions. The construction of houses and other units are along the streets only. This is also called star like pattern.

In olden times, man travelled from one place to another on foot. He carried loads in his head, shoulder, back or dragged them with a rope. Later, man started riding and carrying his goods on animals like elaphants, horses, oxen etc. After the wheel was invented, they made carts that were pulled by animals. As the time passed he learnt to make different types of wheels and designed different means of transport to suit his needs.

With time, modern means of transport evolved. Today, the four modes of transport available to us are roadways, railways, waterways and airways.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

8

Life in the Tropical and  
Sub-tropical Regions

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** (a) (iii) (b) (ii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. Vincente Yanez Pinzon
  2. The Amazon River Basin has teh richest **plant life** in the world.

3. The **selvas** is the home of a rich variety of wildlife.
4. River Ganga is formed by the merging of **Bhagirathi** and **Alaknanda**.
5. Whole forest of the **monsoon** region have deciduous trees.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

- Ans.** 1. True      2. True      3. False      4. False.

**D. Short Answer Question :**

- Ans.**
1. The Ganga River is formed by the merging of Bhagirathi (which originates from the Gangotri glacier at Gaumukh) and Alaknanda (from the Alakapur glaciers).
  2. The first European to discover the Amazon River was a Spanish explorer Vincente Yanez Pinzon. Cruising the coast of Brazil in AD 1500, he sailed into one of the mouths of the Amazon River delta and realized that he had found a very large river indeed. But the actual exploration started in AD 1541.
  3. The Amazon Basin is the largest River Basin in the world.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

1. Do yourself
2. The subcontinent is thickly populated as the climate is quite conducive for agriculture. It has dense network of roads and railways. The movement of goods and people is rapid as the topography of the region is flat. A number of towns and cities exist all across the plain. Delhi, the National Capital Territory, is also located in this plain. The others well known cities along the Ganga are Kanpur, Patna, Allahabad, Varanasi and Kolkata. Wheat, rice, sugarcane and jute are extensively grown here. Two main crops of the region are the rice in Kharif crop in summer and the wheat in rabi crop in winter. At times a third crop called Zaid crop is grown between April and June if water is available. There exist even several agricultural industries related to farming activities. Modern technological advances have the lifestyle of the people living in this part of the world. Life in the villages of India is undergoing a radical change.

Project/Activity

- Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :****Tick (3) the correct answer :**

- Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (ii)                      3. (ii)                      4. (iv).

**B. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans.** 1. The regions where grasses from the dominant type of plant life, are known as grasslands.  
 2. If there is ever a danger of a tornado, the farmers, with the help of their neighbours, harvest their crops. This is done with the help of combined harvesters.  
 3. Ranches.                      4. All agricultural activities.  
 5. Mild climate.

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The combined stream of Ganra and Brahmaputra forms the **big delta**.  
 2. **Deciduous** trees like doedar, pine and fir can be seen in Ganga-Brahmaputra Basin.  
 3. **Grasslands** are basically treeless area.  
 4. The temperate grasslands of South Africa are called the **Velds**.

**D. Match the following :**

- | <b>Ans.</b> | <b>A</b>     | <b>B</b>                                  |
|-------------|--------------|---|
| 1.          | Velds        | i. gold capital of the world              |
| 2.          | Prairies     | ii. temperate grassland of South Africa   |
| 3.          | Johannesburg | iii. temperate grassland of North America |
| 4.          | Sahara       | iv. world's largest desert                |

**E. Distinguish between the following :**

- Ans.** 1. The climate of the Prairies is extreme. The summers are warm and in winters a thick blanket of snow covers this region.  
 The climate of velds is mild because of the influence of India ocean.  
 2. Some important animals living in the Prairie like the

American Birds are grazers. Other are the black-tailed Prairie dog and the American badger.

Velds are the home to a great variety of animals like the elephants, leopards, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffe, antelopes and elands.

**F. Give reasons :**

- Ans.**
1. Prairies have continental type of climate because its area is very wide.
  2. Prairies are known as granaries of the world because this region produces plenty of wheat.

**G. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.**
1. **Velds :** The north-eastern part of Africa is grassland called veld.
  2. **Ranches :** The large cattle farms in the Prairies are known as Ranches.
  3. **Cowboys :** The person who rears the cattle is called cowboy.

**H. Short Answer questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The word 'Prairie' is derived from the Latin word 'priaria' meaning meadow. It is a region of flat, gently sloping or hilly land. Mostly the areas are treeless but, near the low-lying plains, flanking river valleys, trees can be found. Tall grass, up to two metres high, dominates the landscape.
  2. One big town is Winnipeg, which has become a large grain-collecting center. The town is also known as the Gateway to the Canadian Prairies.
  3. Purple needle grass, wild oats, foxtail, ryegrass, and buffalo grass.
  4. Zambezi and Orange.
  5. Elephants, leopards, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffe, antelopes, buck, zebra and elands.

**I. Long Answer questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Prairies is one of the most technically advanced regions of the world. The farmers have huge stretches of land up to 1,000 acres. They live on the farms. The farming activities are carried out with the help of machines. The main crops of the region are wheat and corn, although barley and oats are also grown at times. Ploughing, sowing, threshing and storage are done with one single machine called the combined harvester. The farmers even possess machines

like tractors, wagons, trucks, harrows and seed drills. In Canada wheat is normally sown in the spring and is ready within 100 days. Due to melting of ice in the spring much needed moisture is available. Most of the Canadian wheat, called the spring wheat, is for export purpose.

USA, has a better variety of wheat known as winter, which is grown in winter in the southern part of the Prairie. In the drier western part of the Prairies, both in Canada and USA, cattle rearing is quite common.

There are large cattle farms known as ranches, where cattle reared and looked after by farm hands called from place to place, mounted on horseback.

Throughout the Prairies, the roads and railway lines in the late nineteenth century have made Prairies easily accessible to the new settlers. Several towns have come up along the railway lines. One such big town is Winnipeg, which has become a large grain-collecting center. The town is also known as the Gateway to the Canadian Prairies. Since the traffic on the roads is fast and frequent, collecting and transporting grains is also fast. All farm houses are well equipped with grain collection sheds called Silos, which are tall steel structures. Inside the silo, the grain seems to be well sheltered against the ill effects of the climate.

If there is ever a danger of a tornado, the farmers, with the help of their neighbours, harvest their crops. This is done with the help of combined harvesters.

## **2. Flora and Fauna**

The hottest months are between December and February. Areas of the south-west, which get less rainfall, have tall grasses with stunted trees. Rest of the region has short hardy bushes scattered here and there. These grasslands are home to a great variety of animals like the elephants, leopards, rhinoceros, hippopotamus, giraffe, antelopes, buck, zebra and elands.

The soils are not suitable due to the presence of discontinuous grasses exposing barren surface. But, where the land is fertile, crops are grown. The crops like wheat, maize, barleys and potato can be seen. Other crops like tobacco, and sugar cane are also grown here.

Sheep rearing is common. People keep sheep mainly for wool and have given rise to the wool industry in the velds. Merino sheep is a popular species and its wool is very warm. Dairy farming is also one of the important occupations. Cattle are reared in the warmer and wetter regions and the dairy products like butter, cheese are produced for both domestic and commercial purposes.

Gold and diamond mining are also the major occupations of people. Mining of gold and diamond in South Africa led to the establishments of trade ties with Britain Johannesburg is famous for being the gold capital of the world. Kimberley is known for its diamond mines.

3. Temperate grasslands are located in the interior of the continents. These are vast treeless plains which extends roughly between  $40^{\circ}$  to  $55^{\circ}$  in both the hemisphere.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

10

## Life in the Desert Regions (Sahara and Ladakh)

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

Ans. (a) (iii) (b) (i)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. **Sahara** generally receive less than 25 cm of precipitation in a year.  
2. The **Sahara desert** covers an area of about 9.4 million square kilometres.  
3. Camel provides **milk, meat** and **fur-skin**.  
4. **Poplars** and groves of **willows** can be seen in Ladakh.  
5. The Chirus are the **Tibetan** antelopes found in Ladakh.

#### C. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :

- Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. True

**D. Match the following :**

- Ans.**
- |                    |   |     |                                   |
|--------------------|---|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Deserts         | → | i   | Towards the north west of Sahara  |
| 2. Atlas mountains | → | ii  | Snow land                         |
| 3. Ladakh          | → | iii | Hot and cold                      |
| 4. Khan-pa-Khan    | → | iv  | Best of burden                    |
| 5. Yak             | → | v   | Eastern side of Jammu and Kashmir |

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
- Deserts are arid region characterized by severe high or low temperatures and scanty vegetation.
  - The Sahara Desert in Africa is the largest desert in the world. It is a hot desert and extends across north Africa from the Atlantic Ocean in the west upto the Red Sea in the east. The Atlas Mountains are towards the northwest. Towards the south, it slowly merges into the savanna grasslands. The Sahara Desert spreads out for about 4800 km from east to west and about 1800 km from north to south. It covers an area of about 9.4 million square kilometres. For hundreds of years, the travellers have spoken about the endless shifting of sand in the Sahara Desert. It was called EI Khela, meaning.
  - Sahara Desert has scorching hot and dry climate. It has a short spell of rainy season. The sky is cloudless and clear. The moisture here evaporates faster than it accumulates. Days are unbelievably hot. The temperatures during the day may go as high as 50°C heating up to sand the bare rocks. Which in turn radiates heat making everything around hot. The nights may be freezing cold with temperatures nearing zero degrees. Al Azizia in Sahara Desert, south of Tripoli, Libya recorded the highest temperature of 57.7°C in 1992.
  - People in the Sahara Desert region have adjusted themselves to live in the harsh climate. However, the density of population is very low. The Sahara desert is home to nomadic tribes namely Bedouins and Tuaregs. They practise nomadic herding, moving from place to place with their animals in search of foods and water. They rear sheep, goats, camels, and horses. These animals provide them

milk, hides, wool, etc. These trades locally in dates and rugs. The oasis of Sahara and Nile valley in Egypt have permanent settlement due to availability of water. People here grow vegetables, date palms and crops like rice, wheat, cotton, etc.

These desert stretch of North Africa are rich in oil. Algeria, Libya and Egypt have large reserves of oil. Other minerals in the Sahara desert are iron, manganese and uranium.

The life of the people in the desert is undergoing change as they import most of their requirement from other countries. Now the tractors, automobiles and aeroplanes have replaced the camels and the camel herders are rapidly declining.

5. In Ladakh, otherwise a very cold desert, the heat from the Sun is enough to ripen some crops. Sowing is mostly done in the month of May and harvesting in September (to avoid the frost). Below 3000 metres height wheat is the main crop and elsewhere barley is widely grown.

Grain farming is supplemented by fruit growing and livestock raising. Apricot is the main fruit, other include apples, water melons, grapes, mulberries etc. A variety of vegetables are also grown. The Indian army is helping the people to produce more fruits and vegetables.

The mountains slopes have extensive pastures. Almost every family keeps some livestock, such as yaks, sheep and goats. Yak, the beast of burden, also provide hair (out of which tents are woven) milk and butter. Pashmina from goats is the main source of income.

6. Do yourself
7. Do yourself

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

1. The hot deserts generally lie between 20° and 30° latitudes north and south of the Equator.
2. Agriculture, local trading and herding have been the basis of economy in the desert areas.
3. Do yourself
4. Do yourself

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.



## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (iii)

**B. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

**Ans.** 1. True 2. False 3. True.

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. The medieval period comprises **nearly 1000** years.
  2. The medieval period in India is said to have started in the **8th** century.
  3. Monuments, inscriptions and coins are **archaeological** sources while autobiographies and biographies are **original** sources.

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. In the medieval period in India we find certain historical trends which differentiate it from the ancient world.
    - About this period, sufficient historical material is available as compared to the ancient period.
    - Most of the languages, particularly Hindi and Urdu, that we speak today, developed during this period.
    - During this period the true Indian culture developed with the fusion of the Hindu and the Muslim cultural traits. It was an Indian culture, wholly Indian in form and spirit and is still a common heritage.
    - The Muslim dynasties, particularly the Mughals, provided many centuries of stability to the country. This led to an increase in trade and the growth of urban centres.
    - There was much more contact between India and the rest of the world. This was largely a trading contact. Trade led to a greater interaction of people from different parts of the world.
  2. **Archaeological Sources**  
Archaeological sources include monuments, temples,

inscriptions, coins, utensils, tools, weapons, ornaments, paintings, etc. Monuments, artefacts and paintings illuminate the social and economic history of the time. Rulers of South India encouraged temple building activities. Temples are a rich source of religious and cultural history. Paintings are another valuable source, particularly for the study of the Mughal Period.

Coins are equally important for the study of the history of medieval India. They provide us important dates of political events. A book on coins titled Draya-Pariksha was written during the reign of Alaud-din khalji.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

- 1. Broad Historical Trends :** The historical records are very important because it gives information about history. In the medieval period in India we find certain historical trends which differentiate it from the ancient world.
  - About this period, sufficient historical material is available as compared to the ancient period.
  - Most of the languages, particularly Hindi and Urdu, that we speak today, developed during this period.
  - During this period the true Indian culture developed with the fusion of the Hindu and the Muslim cultural traits. It was an Indian culture, wholly Indian in form and spirit and is still a common heritage.
  - The Muslim dynasties, particularly the Mughals, provided many centuries of stability to the country. This led to trade an increase in trade and the growth of urban centres.
  - There was much more contact between India and the rest to the world. This was largely a trading contact. Trade led to a greater interaction of people from different parts of the world.
- 2.** The sources can be divided into two main types archaeological and literary sources.

**Archaeological Sources**

Archaeological sources include monuments, temples, inscriptions, coins, utensils, tools, weapons, ornaments, paintings, etc. Monuments, artefacts and paintings illuminate the social and economic history of the time.

Rulers of South India encouraged temple building activities. Temples are a rich source of religious and cultural history. Paintings are another valuable source, particularly for the study of the Mughal Period.

Coins are equally important for the study of the history of medieval India. They provide us important dates of political events. A book on coins titled *Drarya-Pariksha* was written during the reign of Alaud-din khalji. It lists details of coins minted during his reign.

### Literary Sources

Literary sources include chronicles of rulers and dynasties, biographies and autobiographies, accounts of foreign travellers, documents and other literary works. Original 'farmans' (imperial decrees) and correspondence of some rulers provide information about period. Political chronicles are an important category of source material. Most of them were compiled under the patronage of kings, while others by Independent scholars, who were not associated with the court.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

2

## Emergence of New Kings and Kingdoms

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (iii) 2. (ii) 3. (i)

#### B. State whether the following statements are true or false :

**Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. False

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

**Ans.** 1. Bengal, Bihar and Jharkhand 2. Nagabhatta  
3. Kanauj 4. Punjab 5. Ur, Sabha and Nagaram

#### D. Short Answer Questions:

**Ans.** 1. Since the eighth century, the Palas, Gurjara-Pratiharas and Rashtrakutas were involved in a struggle, to conquer and hold on to Kanauj.  
2. Delhi and Ajmer.

3. The Palas ruled in the region of Bengal, Bihar and Jharkhand. The first ruler of the dynasty was Gopala. He and his son, Dharmapala, expanded and strengthened the kingdom. Dharmapala and Devapala were great rulers of this dynasty. Dharmapala(780-815CE) was a great warrior. He fought many successful wars with the neighbouring states. He was a Buddhist and founded the famous monastery of Vikramshila, which grew to be a great university later on. Now this university is in ruins. He also encouraged trade with south-east Asia. He was succeeded by his son, Devapala (815-855 LE) who was also an able ruler. He humbled many Rajput clans in the neighbourhood. He was a scholar and a great builder. He built the famous Mahabodhi Temple at Bodh Gaya. Under him, the Pala dynasty established trade relations with south-east Asia. His successors were very weak rulers. So his kingdom passed on to the Muslims towards the end of the 12th century.
4. Rashtrakutas also made significant development in the field of art and architecture. The famous rock cut Kailash Temple at Ellora, Elephanta Caves etc. were the magnificent works of those times.
5. Many rulers described their achievements in 'prashastis' which mean 'in praise of.' They may not be true. They were composed by Brahmans.
6. Do yourself

## E.

### **Long Answer Questions :**

1. By 7th century many new landlords and warrior emerged in different parts of the subcontinent. They were the subordinates of the rulers and called themselves Samantas. They provided military troops, brought gifts for the rulers and made their presence in the courts. When the rulers turned weak, the samantas shook off their control and declared themselves as maha-samantas and took other high sounding titles like maha-mandaleshwara (the great lord of the circle).
2. Dantidurga, who was the founder of the kingdom, overthrew the Chalukyan ruler Kirtivarman and established his rule over a large part of Deccan.
3. The rulers of the medieval period often took high sounding



4. The Rajput dynasties like **Tomars** of Gwalior, the **Ranas** of Mewar who ruled **Central India** put a stiff resistance.

**C. State whether the following statements are True (T) : or False (F)**

- Ans.** 1. True                      2. False                      3. True  
4. False                      5. True

**D. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.** 1. **Masjid** : A mosque or Masjid is a place where the Muslims prostrate in reverence to the Almighty.
2. **Sultanate** : After Muhammad Ghori's death in 1206, Qutub-ud-din Aibak proclaimed himself ruler of the Turkish territories in India. He took the title of Sultan and made Delhi his capital. This was the beginning of Delhi Sultanate.
3. **Iqtadar** : The holder of the land grant Iqta were called Iqtadars.
4. **Qibla** : During prayers the muslims face towards Mecca—the holy shrine of Mecca. It is called Qibla. In India, it is towards the west.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. The founder of Khalji dynasty was Jalaluddin Khalji (1290-1296). He was very old when he ascended the throne. He was not a strong ruler. He was killed by his nephew Alauddin Khalji (1296-1316) who replaced him. He was an efficient administrator. He was replaced by the Tughlaq dynasty.  
He established a vast empire. His conquest of Gujarat gave him access to its ports and overseas trade. Alauddin also conquered Malwa and parts of Rajasthan.
2. Qutb-ud-din Aibak was originally Muhammad Ghori's slave. Hence the dynasty established by him is called to slave or Mamluk dynasty. (mamluk means slave or son of a slave). He belonged to Ibari Turks who were the slaves of the Turkish sultans. He established the sultanate in 1206 and ruled for 4 years from 1206-1210.
3. In the 13th century.
4. In 1414 A.D.
5. Sikandar Lodi was the son of Bahlul Lodi. He was the greatest Lodi king.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Raziya Sultana (1236-1240) was the only woman ruler of both the sultanate and the Mughal period who followed them. The last of these sultans was Ghiyasuddin Balban. Razia's successor of Ghiyasuddin Balban (1266-1287) considerably expanded the sultanate territory from just Delhi and U.P. over whole of north India although he faced stiff resistance from Rajputs and other rulers of the Punjab.

2. **Expansion of Delhi Sultanate**

In the 13th century, Delhi Sultans ruled in Delhi which was heavily fortified by garrisons. Sultans never controlled the hinterland of the cities and thus, had to depend on trade, plunder and tribute for supply. It was not easy to control garrison towns in Bengal. Bad weather, distance are rebellion were biggest weakness for the Delhi Sultanate.

Initially, Delhi sultanate aimed to consolidate the hinterland of the garrison towns. For this forests were cleared in the Ganga, Yamuna doab and nomadic pastoralist were driven away. Peasants were made to encourage agriculture. New forts and towns were created to protect routes and provide regional trade.

The expansion of the Delhi sultanate took place on the external frontier of the Sultanate. The expansion started under the rule of Alauddin Khalji and continued till the rule of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq. During this period, Sultanate troops get elephants, horses, slaves, territories and precious metals. By the end of Muhammad-bin-Tughlaq's rule sultanate armies had marched in a large part of the continent. Rival armies were defeated. For maintenance the sultanate armies had to collect taxes from the peasants.

3. **Administration under the Khalji's and the Tughlaqs**

Under Delhi Sultanate, the society was divided into four chief groups namely aristocrats, priests, towns dwellers and the peasants. The rich, nobles and the sultans lived in a great luxury.

The nobility checked the royal power. In 13th century, the nobility was composed of persons of foreign origin belonged to two groups namely Turkish slaves-nobles and the non-Turkish foreigners of high birth. Out of the two

groups of nobles the Turks were more powerful. Throughout the Sultanate period, the relation between crown and nobility varied according to the character and personal ability of the sultan. The nobility was not a single, united political order. They exercised check on the royal power not as an institution.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

4

The Mughal Empire

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** (a) (iii) (b) (iii) (c) (ii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. The Battle of Kanwaha was fought between Babur and **Rana Sanga**.
  2. **Todar Mal** was the revenue minister who was very efficient in revenue management during Abkar's time.
  3. **William Hawking** was an emissary of King James I of England.
  4. Akbar introduced a new system of administration called the **mansabdari**.
  5. Babur wrote **Tuzuk-I-Baburi**.

**C. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

- Ans.**
1. False
  2. False
  3. True
  4. False
  5. True.

**D. Short Answer Questions:**

- Ans.**
1. HemiChandra Vikramaditya and Akbar
  2. In order to expand his empire and strengthen his position in Central Asia, he invaded India five times.
  3. Sher Shah Suri was the son of an Afghan jagirdar of Sasaram, in Bihar. He was originally named Farid Khan but was given the title of 'Sher' after he killed a tiger.
  4. Raja Todar Mal was the revenue minister of Akbar He introduced a land revenue arrangement which came to be known as 'Todar Mal's bandobast'.



**E. Answer these questions :**

**Ans. 1. Sher Shah Suri (1540-1545)**

Sher Shah Suri was the son of an Afghan jagirdar of Sasaram, in Bihar. He was originally named Farid Khan but was given the title of 'Sher' after he killed a tiger.

Sher Shah was a very ambitious man. Within a short time, he built up a strong army and became powerful in the region of Bihar, Jharkhand and Bengal. He defeated Humayun at Chausa and Kannauj and occupied Delhi. Thereafter, he annexed territories in the north and expanded his hold over this region. Unfortunately, he ruled for a very short time. He died in 1545 and was buried at Sasaram.

**Achievements** Sher Shah was a good general and an even better ruler. He re-organized the civil and military administration and introduced numerous reforms in land revenue administration. He encouraged trade by introducing a new currency, reducing custom duties and building an excellent network of roads. Many of the reforms introduced by Sher Shah were continued by Akbar.

Sher Shah was a secular. He followed a policy of religious tolerance. He respected all religions and looked after the welfare of all his subjects. He is often regarded as the forerunner of Akbar.

Sher Shah was succeeded by Islam Shah. He could not build upon the work of his predecessor. Humayun defeated Islam Shah in 1555 and ended the Sur Empire.

2. Akbar decided to win back Delhi and Agra. The Mughal armies under Bairam Khan marched for Delhi. They met Hemu Vikramaditya and Bairam Khan in AD 1556. Hemu was struck by a casual arrow in the eye and he fell down senseless. His armies fled in panic and he himself was caught and beheaded. Thus, Akbar became the master of Delhi and Agra. Bairam Khan was a great general and looked after the affairs of the kingdom for four years (AD 1556-1560) of great difficulty. In AD 1560, Akbar took the reins of the government in his own hands and advised Bairam Khan to go on a pilgrimage to Mecca. He was, however, killed on the way in Gujarat. Bairam Khan's son, Abdur Rahim, later on become Khan-I-Khana in Akbar's court.

3. Akbar died in AD 1605. Jahangir was the son of Akbar. He had named Nurud-din Salim as his heir-apparent. Salim was 36 years old when he ascended the throne. He took the title of Jahangir. The new ruler of Mewar, Rana Amar Singh, like his father Rana Pratap, had not submitted to the Mughals. So, Jahangir led a campaign against him. The Rana was defeated in AD 1614 but because Rana had provided refuge to Jahangir when he had revolted against his father Akbar. He was given liberal terms. Thereafter, he remained loyal to the Mughal emperor.

Only five months after Jahangir ascended the throne, his son Khurram revolted. He was defeated and imprisoned. Many of his followers were put to death. The Sikhs Guru Arjun Dev, who gave blessings to the rebellious prince, was fined heavily. The Guru refused to pay the fine. He was arrested and tortured to death. Jahangir wrote his own biography, known as Tuzuk-i-Jahangir.

4. Aurangzeb was a Sunni Muslim, so the nobles at the court, who were mostly Sunni, always backed him. The oppressive religious policy of Aurangzeb led to some serious revolts in the country. The Jats lived around Delhi. They had settled around Mathura and Agra as well. The Jats of Mathura broke out in rebellion in AD 166. Gokul was their leader. The rebellion was no doubt suppressed their fight against the Mughals. The Satnamis were a sect of Hindu *sadhus* who lived in Narnaul and Mewar. The persecution of these sadhus forced them to rise in rebellion, but their revolt was crushed. Champat Rai was a Bundela leader. Under his leadership, the Bundelas in Bundelkhand also rose in revolt on account of the oppressive agrarian policy of Aurangzeb. For the time being Aurangzeb was successful in crushing these revolts.

Aurangzeb's Rajput policy was completely reverse of his father Shah Jahan. After the death of Raja Jaswant Singh, he annexed Marwar. During Aurangzeb's rule, Marathas also succeeded in establishing their own kingdom under their leader Shivaji.

**The Sikh Rebellion :** Under Aurangzeb's religious policy Sikhs were transformed from Bhakti saints into a military

brotherhood. During Akbar's reign, Guru Ram Das had founded the new city of Amritsar, which became the headquarters of the new faith. It had also given the Sikhs a permanent organisation with a regular source of income. The sixth Guru, Guru Hargobind (AD 1606-45), son of Guru Arjun Dev, took up the sword and started training his followers into a martial sect. Guru Tegh Bahadur, the ninth Guru of the Sikhs, opposed the policy of persecution followed by Aurangzeb. He also protested against the destruction of Gurudwaras and expulsion of his followers from the cities. He was arrested and brought to Delhi where he was asked to embrace Islam. On his refusal to do so he was tortured and martyred (beheaded) in AD 1675 in the Chandni Chowk.

Thereafter, the Sikhs become sworn enemies of the Mughals. Guru Govind Singh, the son of Guru Tegh Bahdur and the tenth Guru of the Sikhs, transformed them into a martial race. They were organised into a military force called the *Khalsa* or the Pure. Guru Govind Singh was also put to great hardships. In a fierce battle with Mughals, two of the Guru's sons were killed and the other two were captured and buried alive. But the Guru and the Khalsa did not relent in their struggle against the Mughals.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

5

## Monumental Architecture

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (ii)                      4. (i)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The Brihadesvara Temple is dedicated to Lord **Shiva**.
  2. The Qutub Minar was completed by **Iltutmish**.
  3. **Fatehpur Sikri**, near Agra, was built by Akbar as his new capital.
  4. The two architectural features introduced by the Turks were

the **Indo-Islamic style**.

5. Architectural **innovations** stopped under Aurangzeb.

**C. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

- Ans.** 1. True                      2. True                      3. False.  
4. True                      5. False

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. The kings and their officials built two kinds of buildings. The first were the forts, palaces, garden residences and tombs. The second were the structures meant for public activity. The king had to look after his subjects and provide them comfort.
2. The Sultans of Delhi built many monuments. Qutub-ud-din Aibak built the Quwwat-ut-Islam Mosque in Delhi and the Adhai Din Ka Jhonpra in Ajmer. He also started the construction of the Qutub Minar. It was ultimately completed by Iltutmish.  
The Qutub Minar is a masterpiece of Indo-Islamic architects. It was designed by Muslim architects but built by Hindu craftsmen. It is 240 feet high. Largely made of red sandstone, it also uses white marble. There is a circular stairway to reach the top. The Qutub Minaris are considered one of the wonders of the medieval world.  
Ala-ud-din Khalji also took a keen interest in building activities. He built the Alai Darwaza in 1311. It is made of red sandstone. The Alai Minar is also attributed to Ala-ud-din.
3. The Jain Temple at Mount Abu (Dilwara) in Rajsthan were erected by the ministers of the Solanki rules of Gujarat from 11th to the 13th centuries. The interiors were covered with delicate carvings while the outside was plain and austere. The most beautiful temple at Mt. Abu is that of Tejjapala. Its half are of pure marble and show excellent and delicate workmanship. The Jain statue of Gomateshvara at Shravanabelagola in Mysore in one of the largest free standing images (57 feet) in the world.
4. Under Shah Jahan, there was a change in the building style as well as material. The emphasis was now on uniformity and symmetry. Red sandstone, popular with Akbar and Jahangir, was replaced by white marble. The walls began to

be decorated with precious and semi-precious stones. This method of decoration is called pietradura.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. There was a degeneration in architecture during this period. The most famous monument built during the reign of the Later Mughals is the tomb of Safdarjung in Delhi. The tomb is located in the middle of a garden and has a single dome.

The nawabs of Lucknow built many imambaras. The Bara Imambara was built by Nawab Asaf-ud-Daula in 1784. The Chota Imambara and the Rami Darwaza are the other monuments in Lucknow.

The nawabs of Bengal built the Katra Masjid and the Chowk Masjid. Sawai Raja Jai Singh of Amber built astronomical observations at many places. The monuments of the kingdom of Mysore include the Darya Daulat Palace, the Gumbad-i-Ala and the Jami Masjid.

2. **Taj Mahal**

By all the structure erected by Shah Jahan there none that can be compared with Taj Mahal at Agra. He built it in memory of his wife, Mumtaz Mahal. The monument is as tall as a 20 storeys skyscraper. It took 22 years to build and was constructed at a cost of 32 million rupees. Over 20,000 labourers worked on it day and night. Most sources attribute its design to Ustad Isa Khan Effendi, of Shiraz and his pupil, Ustad Ahmad Lahori.

The Taj is a mix of several architectural styles. It is placed in the middle of a garden. It is built of white marble, which was obtained from Markrana in Rajasthan. The Taj is decorated with colourful precious and semi-precious stones, imported from other countries. Shah Jahan used the pietra-dura ornamentation on white marble on a large scale in his favourite Taj.

The Taj has a huge pearl-shaped dome and four slender minarets, which link the platform to the main building. The tapering minarets have a slight tilt away from the main body of the tomb so that in case of an earthquake, they do not collapse on the tomb. Pietra-dura inlay work, and numerous chhatris add to the beauty of the building. The interior has the marble cenotaphs of Mumtaz Mahal and Shah Jahan.



the Qutub Shahi ruler permitted the Dutch to establish a factory at Masulipatnam. Situated in the Bay of Bengal, Masulipatnam is the administrative centre of the Krishna district in the state of Andhra Pradesh.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Masulipatnam was called Machilipatnam owing to the construction of a gateway to the town which was decorated with the eyes of a fish (machili). It was founded in the fourteenth century by the Arabs.

Masulipatnam was a port from where the French, British and Dutch traded during the seventeenth century. It was a prime production centre of fine chintz, which was much in demand in the South-east Asian markets. A royal order from the Qutub Shahi ruler permitted the Dutch to establish a factory at Masulipatnam.

Situated in the Bay of Bengal, Masulipatnam is the administrative centre of the Krishna district in the state of Andhra Pradesh. This town is a railway terminus and an important educational centre. This port-city is known for its fishing trade, carpet weaving industry and for scientific instruments. Other products include agricultural produce fabulous wealth to India.

This Kalamkari technique derives its name from the Russian word Kalam or a pen-like tool used to draw outlines on the cloth and kari means work. Thus, Kalamkari meant the work done by 'kalam'. In its heyday this port used to handle export of different items weighing more than 2.7 lakhs tonnes and imports of 37,000 tonnes.

2. **Growth of Towns :** The towns that developed India were of different types. There were court towns, pilgrimage centres, trading towns, ports and various other types of towns.

During the medieval period, a large number of new towns developed in different parts of India. We get to know about these towns mainly from their archaeological and from various literary sources.

**Pilgrimage Centres :** Some of the towns developed as pilgrimage centres. The chief among them are Kurukshetra, Sanchi, Sarnath, (Both Gaya) Haridwar, Badrinath, Kedarnath, Mathura, Allahabad, Banaras, Jaganath, Puri,

Bhubaneshwar, Dwarka Puri, Shringeri, Delhi, Fatehpur Sikri, Ajmer, Nankana Sahib, Amritsar and Patna etc.

**Port-Cities :** Both in the Ancient and the Medieval period India had developed both internal and external trade on a large scale. Some of the trade was carried on through land-scale. Some of the trade was carried on through land-routes but sea-routes also played an important part especially while trading with foreign countries. India has seas on its three sides so various port-cities developed both in the eastern and western coasts of India. On the western coast of India, Cambay, Sopara, Broach, Surat, Cochin, Goa, Kawlam (or Quilam) had become very important sea ports because of its flourishing trade with African south-west Asian and many European countries, Indian spices and other merchandise had great demand in all these western countries.

On the east coast of India Tamralipti (Tamluk, now in Bengal) and Vishakhapatnam (now in Andhra Pradesh) were the major sea-ports through which India maintained commercial relations with south-eastern countries.

**Trading Towns :** Almost all foreign travellers (like Wassaf, Yalrut, Idrisi, Marco Polo etc.) confirm that Indian merchants were very busy in land and sea-route trade. They went to western countries and China through the new land routes, while through the sea routes they visited Arabian, African and European countries on the west and south-eastern countries in the east. As such a large number of trading towns also came up. Among them the most important were those of Multan, Lahore, Delhi, Agra, Fatehpur Sikri, Patna, Dacca, Anhilwara, Champaran and Surat (all in Gujarat), Balasara (Orissa), Burhanpur (in the West), Tamralipti (Bengal), Ahmedabad Masulipatnam, Rajmabad (in the east) Ahmednagar, Goa, Daman, Diu etc.

### **Traders and Craftsmen**

Both the traders and craftsmen have a great part to play in the economic activities of the country. Indian craftsmen were perfect masters in producing articles of different kinds and that to in good quality. They were perfect masters in the field of textile industry and their cotton, woollen, and silk cloth



had no comparison in the world. Indian craftsmen had great mastery over the manufacture of both silk and leather goods. From Marco Polo we learn that Indian craftsman could produce excellent silk and leather goods. He writes "Beautiful mats in red and blue leather and inlaid with figures of birds and beasts, and skillfully embroidered with gold and silver wires were quite exquisite.

The art of making metals was pursued with great success during their period (1800-1707). Both the ironsmiths and goldsmiths produced the most fascinating quality.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

7

## Tribes, Society in the Medieval Period

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

Ans. (a) (ii) (b) (ii)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.
1. Members of each tribe was united by **Kinship** bond.
  2. **Banjaras** were the most important trader nomads.
  3. **Jabalpur** was the capital of Rani Durgavati.
  4. The Ahoms originally belonged to the **Mao-shan** tribe of china

#### C. State whether the following statements are true or false :

Ans. 1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. False.

#### D. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans.
1. The Mundas and Santhals were important tribes in Bihar.
  2. Gonds were the tribes found in the state of Chattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra and Andhra Pradesh.

#### E. Long Answer Questions :

- Ans.
1. **Gonds**  
The Gonds were the most important tribal group in Central India. The name Gond is derived from the Telugu word 'Konda' which means a hill. They Gonds in medieval times had emerged as a powerful nomadic tribal group. Several Gond kingdom surfaced in Mughal times. They were called

the 'Raj Gonda'.

One of the most powerful Gond ruler was Rani Durgavati. She is famous in Indian history for refusing to submit to the Mughal Emperor Akbar who wanted to conquer the interiors of Central India as part of his goal of conquering the whole of India.

Rani Durgavati's kingdom was one of the five traditionally independent Gond states. Jabalpur was her capital. She was offered the choice of becoming a vassal of the Mughals and live peacefully. However, she refused to bow before Akbar. In the fight that ensued, the queen died fighting. The kingdom finally fell to the Marathas in 1789. The region controlled by the Gonds was subsequently taken over by the British in 1817.

## 2. **Change in the Caste Structure**

With the passage of time the caste system became more and more rigid and complex due to the introduction of new people, new influences and new elements in the Indian society. But the Brahmans still were the privileged class. According to one writer, eating a Shudra's food, association with him sitting on the same seat with him and taking lessons from him were the act that dragged even a noble person down. Even the shadow of a shudra was considered to pollute a noble person. Hence, it shows utter degradation of the lower-class people. Inter-caste marriage were not generally permitted. In case a high caste person married a low caste woman the caste of their mother. On the other hand, if a high caste women married a low caste man the caste of their offspring was determined by the caste of their father. The contemporary writers mention such castes as of potters, leather-workers, fisherman, hunters etc. The Smriti writers regard these craftsmen as belonging to the low caste. It was the reason that most of the labouring people and innocent tribals were considered untouchables. The new caste that originated during the Early Medieval period was those of the Rajputs. The historians differ on their origin. Some of the Rajputs trace their descent from the Solar and Lunar dynasties of Mahabharata period. Some other claim their origin from the sacrificial fire lit by the Agastya Rishi on Mount Abu. Some foreign scholars maintain that the Rajputs were the

descendants of the Scythians and the Huns who settled in India after Harsha. At different times even the Brahmana and the Vaisya families established their rule in the country. It is believed that all the ruling families, in course of time came to be known as Rajputras of Rajputs. As such all these people were given the status of the Kshatriyas.

But it must be admitted that the classification of caste was a yet not so rigid. The Kayastha caste in this period included both the Brahmins and the Shudras who worked in royal establishments. In course of time they became a distinct caste. In this period (AD 800-1200), Hinduism made rapid progress and besides the Jains and the Buddhists several foreign clans were absorbed into its expanding folds. In course of time new castes and sub-castes were born but they continued their old ceremonies, rituals of marriage, their gods and goddesses and their own festivals.

During the Sultanate Period (1206-1526) and the Mughal period (1526-1708) there was no let off in the caste-restrictions and the caste system continued to become more and more complex and rigid. The Bhakti Saints did take some steps to do away with the caste shackles.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

8

## Religious Ideas in the Medieval Period

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (i)                      3. (iv)                      4. (i)

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The teaching of **Buddhism** and **Jainism** became popular.
  2. The **Alvass** worshipped Vishnu and his avatars through hymns.
  3. Shankaracharya gave the idea of **Advaita**.
  4. **Kabir** and **Guru Nanak** rejected all orthodox religions.

**C. Match the following :**

**Ans.**

- | A                 | B                                 |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Ghazzali       | i. A genealogy of Sufi saint      |
| 2. Alvars         | ii. A Bhakti saint of South India |
| 3. Nayanars       | iii. Devotees of Vishnu           |
| 4. Shankaracharya | iv. Devotees of Shiva             |
| 5. Silsilas       | v. A sufi saint of Central Asia   |

**D. Write short notes on the following :**

**Ans.**

- (a) **Nayanars and Alvars** : The Alvars between 7th and 10th centuries worshipped Vishnu and his avatars through their hymns. Alvar (Azhvars) means 'immersed'. They were so-called because they were immersed in their devotion and live to their Lord Vishnu. The 12th Alvars have left behind a legacy of devotional songs in Tamil language. Their collection of songs is called 'Divya Prabandham'. The Alvars came from all castes and divergent backgrounds. Alvars saints have contributed to the establishment of a culture of Vedic religion. They wrote in Tamil language and not in Sanskrit. The well-known Alvars saints are Periyalvar, his daughter Andal, Tondaradipodi Alvar and Nammalvar.
- There were 63 Nayanars, who belonged to different castes, such as potters, untouchable workers, peasants, soldiers, Brahmans and chiefs. The best known among them are Appar, Sambandar, Sundarar and Manikkavasagar. These were two sets of compilation of their songs—the Tevaram and Tiruacakam.
- (b) **Divya Prabandham** : The 12th Alvars have left behind a legacy of devotional songs in Tamil language. Their collection of songs is called 'Divya Prabandham'
- (c) **Emergence of Silsilas** : The Chisti silsila was among the most influential orders. It was introduced in India by Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chisti, who came at the time of Muhammad Ghor's conquest and settled in Ajmer. His tomb at Ajmer is visited both by the Hindus and the Muslims. Chisti silsila had long line of teachers like Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki of Delhi, Nizam-ud-din Auliya of Delhi and Bandarawaja Girudaraz of Gulbarga.
- (d) **Teachings of Bhakhtiyar Kaki** : Khwaja Bhakhtiyar Kaki

did not have any formal doctrines. He often held majlis (meeting) at his home, where the expressed his thoughts. They laid emphasis on renunciation, having complete trust in God, treating all human beings as equal and helping them, whenever the need arose. What money was donated to him, he gave it in charity.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Ramanuja was born in Tamil Nadu in the 11th century. He was deeply influenced by the Alvars. He preached that an extreme devotion to Vishnu would help the devotee to attain salvation and bliss of union with Him. He propounded the idea of Vishishtadvaita, in which the soul remained distinct even after union with God.
2. Do yourself
3. The Chishti silsila was among the most influential orders. It was introduced in India by Khwaja Muin-ud-din Chishti, who came at the time of Muhammad Ghori's conquest and settled in Ajmer. His tomb at Ajmer is visited both by the Hindus and the Muslims. Chishti silsila had long line of teachers like Qutub-ud-din Bakhtiyar Kaki of Delhi, Nizam-ud-din Auliya of Delhi and Bandanawaj Gisudaraz of Gulbarga.

**F. Long Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. To break the jin of birth related status many new ideas evolved and the teaching of Buddhism and Jainism became popular. They offered the possibility to break the cycle of rebirth through personal salvation. So the people attracted to Buddhism and Jainism.
2. All Bhakti saints believed in a Supreme God.
3. New Bhakti movements emerged between 7th to 9th centuries, In South India, the Nayanar and Alvar saints, who were devotees of Shiva and Vishnu spread the message of Bhakti and devotion to God among all sections of the society, irrespective of their castes. These saints were highly critical of Jainism and Buddhism. They used Tamil language and not Sanskrit for preaching and composing their hymns. Some of the saints came from lower classes. They travelled widely, preaching values of Bhakti. They took inspiration from Sangam literature, the earliest Tamil

literature. The Pandya and Chola rulers built temples around the places visited by the Bhakti saints. It strengthened the links between Bhakti and temple worship.

4. Alwars — Saints who were followers of Lord Vishnu.  
Nayanass — Saints who were followers of Shiva.

5. **Saints of Maharashtra**

Maharashtra from 13th to 17th century saw the rise of many saints. Like Janeshwar Namdev, Eknath, Tukaram, Sakkubai, etc. who inspired people for Bhakti by composing songs in simple Marathi language. One more such inspiration was the family of Chokhamela, belonging to Mahar (untouchable) caste. The regional tradition focused on the Vitthala (a form of Vishnu) in Pandharpur on the notion of a personal good embedded in the hearts of the people. The Marathi saint-poets condemned all rituals, outward display of piety and attacked the social discrimination based on birth. This group rejected any form of renunciation and preached to serve the needy fellow beings along with their profession. The humanistic Bhakti of sharing other's pain was the brainchild of these poets. Narsi Mehta a Gujarti saint thus wrote, "They are Vaishnavas who understand the pain of others."

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

9

## Emergence of Regional Culture

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (i) 3. (i) 4. (iv) 5. (ii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. Regional cultures are a product of intermixing of **local culture** with ideas from other areas of the **subcontinent**.
  2. The local people made of the deity, which originally a local God came to be identified with **Vishnu**.
  3. The Kangra artists by the mid 18th century infused a new life into a **miniature painting**.

4. **Miniature** are small sized painting done in water colour.
5. Bengal a hot **fish** and **rice**.

**C. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

- Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. False.  
4. True                      5. False

**D. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.** 1. **Sati** : Ordinary people are attracted towards the depiction of strong emotions-loyalty, anger, friendship, love, etc. in the poems and songs inspired by heroes of Rajasthan. Likewise, at times women were the cause of conflict in Rajasthan. Women are given a hero image since they committed *sati* or self-immolation after the death of their husbands.
2. **Basohli** : By the late 17th century miniature painting had even affected the Himalayas foothills where a new and bold style of miniature painting called Basohli developed.
3. **Pirs** : The word pir included religious personalities saints or sufis, deities soldiers, Hindu and Buddhist deities and even animistic spirits.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. Bharatnatyam, Kathakali and Odissi.  
2. Bravery.  
3. **The Cheras**

The Chera kingdom of Mahodayapuram was established in the 9th century, in the south-western part of the continent i.e.; present Kerala. The people spoke Malayalam and official records were also kept in Malayalam language. The rulers even inscribed inscriptions in this language.

4. Kathak was evolved in Northern India. Derived from the word “katha,” it is a Sanskrit word used for telling stories. The kathaks initially were a caste of story-tellers in North Indian temple, whose performance was accompanied with gestures and songs. *Kathak* evolved as a distinct dance form in 15th and 16th century under the Bhakti movement.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. Generally speaking a region is identified with the language spoken by people in the area. It is generally assured that Bengali language is spoken by people of Bengal. It is generally perceived that Bengali as a language originated from Sanskrit language. However, mid-first millennium

BCE texts suggest that the people of Bengal did not speak Bengali. Since the fourth-third centuries BCE trade ties developed between Magadha and Bengal. In the 4th century, Gupta rulers and Brahmins settled in the area. It led to strong cultural and linguistic influence from mid-Ganga valley in this region. Xuan Zang the Chinese traveller in 7th century observed that Sanskrit was used all over Bengal. In 8th century, Palas conquered Bengal while between the 14th and 16th century Sultans independent of Delhi conquered Bengal. In 1586, when Akbar took over Bengal, the Bengal Suba developed. Bengali developed as a regional language while Persian group of dialects was united by a common literary language. It was based on language spoken in western part of Bengal called West Bengal. In spite of originating from Sanskrit, Bengali developed from certain phases of development. Modern Bengali even derived from a number of other non-Sanskrit languages, tribal language and Persian and European language.

2. The new settlers wanted teachers and leaders who were called as Pirs.  
The word pir included religious personalities, saints or sufis, deified soldiers, Hindu and Buddhist deities and even animistic spirits. The pirs cult was popular in Bengal.
3. The double-rooted (Dechala) and four-rooted (Chauchala) structure of thatched hut was copied by temples. It was a typical style of Bengali architecture. In comparatively four-roofed structure, four-triangular roofs were placed on the four walls to converge on a curved line or point. Temples were usually made on a square platform. While the interiors were plain, other walls of temples were decorated by ornamental tiles, terracotta tablets and paintings. In areas like Ankura district of West Bengal such decoration achieved a high degree of excellence.
4. In late 15th century to late 19th century, Bengal even witnessed a temple building spree. Many rulers got temples and religious structures built to show their power and earn their piety. Many low social groups like *Kolu* and *Kansari* worked for building of brick and terracotta temples in Bengal. It opened new avenues. The social and economic



position of many families improved. Local deities that were worshipped in thatched huts, were now worshipped in temples. The double-rooted (Dechala) and four-rooted (Chauchala) structure of thatched hut was copied by temples. It was a typical style of Bengali architecture. In comparatively four-roofed structure, our-triangular roofs were placed on the four walls to courage on a curved line or point. Temples were usually made on a square platform. While the interiors were plain, other walls of temples were decorated by ornamental tiles, terracota tablets and paintings. In areas like Ankura district of West Bengal such decoration achieved a high degree of excellence.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

10

## Political Formations in the Eighteenth Century

### Exercise

A. Multiple Choice Questions :

Ans. 1. (ii) 2. (ii) 3. (i).

B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. **Abdullah Khan Baraha** and **Husain Ali Khan Baraha** were the Sayyid brothers.  
 2. Guru Gobind Singh founded the Khalsa in 1699.  
 3. **Hyder Ali** started his career as a food soldier.  
 4. Marathas lived in the hilly regions of **Bijapur** and **Golconda**.

C. Match the columns :

Ans.

- | A                     |   | B   |
|-----------------------|---|---|
| 1. Jahandar Shah      | → | i. established an arsenal in Dindigul.    |
| 2. Ahmad Shah Abdali  | → | ii. was the last Peshwa.                  |
| 3. Bahadur Shah Zafar | → | iii. invaded India in 1761.               |
| 4. Hyder Ali          | → | iv. defeated Afzal Khan and Shaista Khan. |
| 5. Shivaji            | → | v. was succeeded by Farrukhsiyar.         |
| 6. Balaji Baji Rao    | → | vi. was the last Mughal emperor.          |

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Nadir Shah
2. The Mughal rulers who came to the throne after the death of Aurangzeb were called Later Mughals.
3. The contemporary observers described the wealth looted from the Mughal treasury as 60 lakhs rupees and some thousands gold coins nearly one crore worth of gold-wares and fifty crores worth of jewels.
4. Do yourself
5. The chauth was one-fourth of the total land revenue that farmers paid to the king who directly controlled these territories. Shivaji collected this tax in return for a promise of not raiding and plundering these territories. The sardeshmukhi was an additional one-tenth of the land revenue. It was taken as a tribute.

**D. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

**1. Later Mughals**

The Mughal rulers who came to the throne after the death of Aurangzeb were called Later Mughals. They lacked the political skill and organisational ability of the predecessors. The political condition of India changed dramatically after the death of Aurangzeb in 1707.

**Bahadur Shah I (1707-1712)**

Bahadur Shah I ruled for a few years. He tried to win over the Rajputs by recognizing Ajit Singh as the ruler of Jodhpur. He also tried to appease the Marathas by releasing Shahu, the grandson of Shivaji, and offering him a high administrative post. He also sought the friendship of the Sikhs.

**Jahandar Shah (1712-1713)**

After the death of Bahadur Shah I, a war of succession broke out. Jahandar Shah emerged victorious and ruled for a few months. He was a puppet in the hands of Zulfiqar Khan, the most powerful noble of the time. Jahandar Shah was overthrown by his nephew, Farrukhsiyar.

**Farrukhsiyar (1713-1719)**

Farrukhsiyar was a ruler only in name. The empire was controlled by the Sayyid brothers-Abdullah Khan Baraha and Husain Ali Khan Baraha. They were known as the

'kingmakers'. In 1719, they removed Farrukhsiyar from the placed and removed two more rulers. Finally, They declared Muhammad Shah as the emperor.

### **Muhammad Shah (1720-1748)**

He is known as Rangeela or colourful king due to his indulgences. He just remained a silent spectator to the actual break up of Mughal empire. However, he took the help of a group of nobles under the leadership of Chin Quilich Khan and got one of the Sayyid Brother, Hassan assassinated and Hussain imprisoned in 1720. Nizam-ul-Malik (Chin Quilich Khan) was the viceroy of Deccan and most powerful of the nobles. He was made the wazir in 1722. He made some serious efforts to improve the affairs of the state.

2. Mysore became a powerful kingdom under Hyder Ali. He started his career as a foot soldier and gradually rose to become the ruler of Mysore in 1761. As a ruler, he controlled the rebellious zamindars and improved the condition of the peasants. He also modernized his army. With the help of the French, he established a modern arsenal at Dindigul. IN 1769, he defeated the British in the First Anglo-Mysore War. He died in 1782.

Hyder Ali was succeeded by his son, Tipu Sultan. He was known as the 'Tiger of Mysore' Tipu was deeply influenced by the ideas of the French Revolution. He introduced modern weapons in his army and made an effort to built a modern navy. He also realized the importance of trade and industry and tried to introduced modern industries in India. He died fighting the British, during the course of the Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799).

3. Shivaji was very ambitious since his childhood. He dreamt of establishing a large and powerful empire. While still young, he put together a small army. When the kingdom of Bijapur became weak, he used guerilla tactics to capture many forts near Pune.

The growing power of Shivaji alarmed the king of Bijapur. He sent an army under Afzal Khan to defeat and kill Shivaji. However, it was Shivaji who succeeded in killing Afzal Khan. He then defeated the Bijapuri army and captured a large booty.

At the time Shivaji defeated Bijapur soldiers, Aurangzeb had ascended the throne. He wanted to curb growing power of Shivaji. In 1660, Shaista Khan was sent to Deccan to invade his dominions. It was the first time that the Maratha leader had to face the might of Mughals. Shaista Khan initially did succeed. When he reached Pune, the Maratha leader Shivaji had quietly slipped into his camp. Shivaji killed several members of his household including his son and even wounded Shaista Khan. There was not much resistance from the Mughal forces and they soon abandoned Pune. This was because the Marathas were experts in guerilla warfare and they feared further bloodshed.

#### 4. **Successors-The Peshwas**

After Shivaji's death in 1680, he was succeeded by his son Sambhaji who was tortured to death by the Mughals in 1689. Later his step brother Raja Ram carried on the struggle against Mughals until his death in 1700. Tarabai, Raja Ram's widow, a capable leader became the regent for her minor son Shivaji II. In the meanwhile Shahu, the son of Sambhaji was released from Mughal prison. He captured the throne from Tarabai.

Shahu was the Maratha king in 1713 and he appointed Balaji as his Peshwa or Prime Minister. Soon under his capable leadership Peshwa became a very dominant figure in Maratha empire. After Balaji's death, the position and the title of Peshwa became hereditary and six other Peshwas ruled on powers until 1818. The Peshwa rule on behalf of Marathas. It was during the rule of these Peshwas that Maratha empire saw its greatest extent.

#### **Balaji Vishwanath (1713-1720)**

Balaji Vishwanath took advantage of the weakness of the Later Mughals to extend the boundaries of the Maratha kingdom. He forced the Mughal ruler to return all the territories, which had earlier formed a part of Shivaji. Besides, Shahu was also given the right to collect 'chauth' and 'sardeshmukhi' of six provinces in the Deccan.

#### **Baji Rao I (1720-1740)**

Baji Rao I succeeded Balaji Vishwanath. He led many campaigns against the Mughals. The Marathas conquered

Malwa, southern Gujarat and parts of Bundelkhand. Towards the south the Nizam of Hyderabad was defeated and forced to grant the right to collect taxes from some provinces of the Deccan. Baji Rao I also captured Saldette and Bessein from the Portuguese

**Balaji Baji Rao (1740-1761)**

Balaji Baji Rao was the next Peshwa. After the death of Shahu in 1749, he became the leader of the Mughals. He shifted the capital from Satara to Poona (Pune). During his reign, the Maratha armies reached as far as Bihar and Orissa in the east and Delhi and Punjab in the north. The kingdoms of Mysore and Hyderabad were forced to cede territories and pay tribute. Under him, the Maratha power was at its peak.

5. (a) **Raja Sawai Jai Singh** : Most of the Rajput kingdoms, since the reign of Akbar, had been close allies of the Mughals. However, when Mughal power began to decline, they became independent. The most outstanding Rajput ruler of this period was Sawai Raja Jai Singh or Amber (now called Jaipur). He encouraged the teaching and learning of science in an age when the Indians were unaware of the scientific achievements of the West. He founded the city of Jaipur and built astronomical observations at Delhi, Jaipur, Mathura, Ujjain and Benaras.

(b) **Tipu Sultan** : Hyder Ali was succeeded by his son, Tipu Sultan. He was known as the 'Tiger of Mysore' Tipu was deeply influenced by the ideas of the French Revolution. He introduced modern weapons in his army and made an effort to built a modern navy. He also realized the importance of trade and industry and tried to introduced modern industries in India. He died fighting the British, during the course of the Fourth Anglo-Mysore War (1799).

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (ii)                      2. (iii)                      3. (i)                      4. (i)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The **Dalits** were forced to live in separate colonies.  
 2. Primary education was neglected during the **British** period.  
 3. The right to vote facilitates the opportunity of **equality** in society.  
 4. Everyone has the right to lead a life with **respect**.

**C. Define the following terms :**

- Ans.** 1. **Equality** : The Indian Constitution treats all citizens as equal. There is no discrimination on the basis of wealth, caste, birth, creed, religion, colours, status, property, sex.  
 2. **Universal Adult Franchise** : Universal Adult Franchise is a very important aspect of democratic societies. In a democratic country like India every adult citizen. Who is not less than eighteen years of age, exercise the right to vote, is called Universal Adult Franchise.  
 3. **Untouchability** : Untouchability is the worst form of caste inequality.

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. Poverty  
 2. Economic discrimination has brought wide up gap between man and man, Thus, the society is divided into two groups—haves and have-nots.  
 3. Universal Adult Franchise is a very important aspect of democratic societies. In a democratic country like India every adult citizen, who is not less than eighteen years of age, exercises the right to vote, is called Universal Adult Franchise.  
 4. Our Constitution ensures equal status and opportunity to each individual. It guarantees fundamental rights to all its

citizens. These rights are essential for an individual to develop his/her personality and lead a life with dignity. Thus, equality is guaranteed to all. This is recognised in democratic India. Everyone is equal before law. It means that no one can be discriminated against on the grounds of religion, race, caste, sex or place of birth etc. People committing the same crime are punished equally, regardless of their status. The same right applies in matters of their education and employment. Everyone has the right to avail equal access to shops, restaurants, hotels and places of public entertainment. Practice of unsociability has been made illegal. Those who follow this practice are liable to be punished. Our government has introduced several laws in this regard. It has also started several programmes in order to give maximum help to those who belong to the group of disadvantaged communities.

5. he headed the Indian constitution drafting body. He is also known as the Father of the Indian constitution.

**E. Answer the following questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The Indian constitution treats all citizens as equal. There is no discrimination on the basis of wealth, caste, birth, creed, religion, colours, status, properly, sex. The principle of equality of all citizens is recognised. Several laws have been made to treat people with dignity and prevent them from discrimination and maltreatment.
2. The inequality based on caste is quite predominant in India. Caste is an important factor in matrimonial alliances and interaction in society. Untouchability is the worst form of caste inequality. Since ancient times India has suffered from the evil practice of untouchability when a huge strata of society called the shudra or Dalit was kept segregated from the society as they belonged to lower castes. A famous Dalit writer Om Prakash Valmiki in his autobiography *Joothan* clearly narrates that in his school life he was made to sit at the black of the while his classmates were studying. It was only when Valmiki's father confronted the teacher on seeing his son cleaning the floor that the evil practice stopped and his son could study.
3. The midday meal scheme is one such scheme which the

government has introduced to improve the lives of the poor. This programme has been introduced in all government elementary school. Under this programme children are provided with cooked food during their school hour. The second scheme is save shiksha abhiyan.

4. Few decades ago, upper caste people dominated all spheres of society like politics, bureaucracy, education. Mahar caste people were not allowed into the village and lived outside the village area. They were very poor, owned no land. Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar, who belonged to this caste fought for the rights of the Dalits. The movement led by him had an impact on the Indian Constitution. He urged Dalits to take various types of government jobs in order to move out of the caste system. Due to this and other leader's great efforts, now we can see the class once considered as untouchables has now occupied many prominent places everywhere. Such a situation affects our society.

5. **Midday Meal Scheme**

The midday meal scheme is one such scheme which the government has introduced to improve the lives of the poor. This programme has been introduced in all government elementary schools. Under this programme, children are provided with cooked food during their school hour. This programme proved to be advantageous from several points of view. Previously, the poor children avoided to go to school. But now they have become very regular in attending school. They don't need to go home during the recess for lunch. Once they come in the school in the morning, they stay there till the school time is over. This has benefitted their mothers too. Now they don't need to come back home from their workplace to feed their children. This programme has really encouraged a large number of children to attend school.

Another important aspect of the midday meal scheme is that, it has brought both lower and upper caste children at the same level. They eat together the same food. There are also some schools where Dalit women cook food. Thus, caste factor doesn't matter much now. The midday meal scheme is a boon to the poor students. Before this scheme, a number of



poor students, due to lack of sufficient food, failed to concentrate on their studies. But now they have become prompt to their studies with enough food in their stomachs. This scheme is undoubtedly a step towards removal of illiteracy.

Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (iv)                      2. (iv)                      3.(iv)                      4. (i)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. Our Constitution provides **three-tier** government.  
 2. An MLA is a **representative** of the public.  
 3. The Legislative Assembly is also called **Vidhan Sabha**.  
 4. There are **three** categories of ministers at the state level.

**C. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

- Ans.** 1. True                      2. False                      3. True                      4. False.

**D. Match the following :**

**Ans.**

<b>A</b>		<b>B</b>
(a) It declares list of the elected representatives	→	i. The Chief Minister
(b) He is the nominal executive head of the state	→	ii. The Election Commission
(c) They are directly elected by people	→	iii. The Governor
(d) He is the main executive body of the state	→	iv. The Cabinet
(e) It makes all important decisions	→	v. MLAs

**F. Answer the following questions :**

- Ans.** 1. India is a union of states. It has 28 states and 7 union territories as shown in the map on give here. To run government smoothly Indian Constitution has adopted a democratic form of government. The Constitution provides a three-tier government. At the top there is a Central

Government., then there are State Governments and at the bottom it is the Panchayati Raj system. The responsibility of the Central Government is to see the administration and government as a whole including foreign affairs. The job of the State Government is confined to the boundaries of the particular state.

2. **Governor**

The Governor is the head of the state. He is appointed by the President for a term of five years on executive. However, he is only the official head on the recommendations of Union Council of Ministers. He serves till the pleasure of the President and can be transferred by the President from one state to another. He acts on the advice of the chief minister, who holds the real power.

A person can be the governor of more than one state at a time.

The Governor of a state exercises legislative, executive, judicial and discretionary powers. He is answerable to the President and on many occasion executes the order of the President.

Like the president, the Governor is responsible for all appointments at high offices within the state. He can address the legislature at any time, or send written message to it. He has the power to summon a session of the legislature or even close one. He can also dissolve the Legislative Assembly on the advice of the Council of Ministers.

All bills passed by the State Legislature have to be approved and signed by the Governor. On certain occasions, when the State Legislature is not in session, the Governor issues orders which are known as Ordinances. These are valid till six weeks after the next session of the legislature.

A finance bill can be presented in the Legislature only when the Governor has recommended it. The Governor has the right to pardon or reduce or defer the sentence of a convict.

3. **State Legislature** : A state legislature usually consists of the governor of the state and one house of legislative called the Vidhan Sabha (legislative assembly). Some state have one House while others have two. Where there is one House, it is called the Legislative Assembly and where there are two

Houses, the Upper House is called Legislative Council and Lower House is called Legislative Assembly. There are two Houses in Andhra Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Karnataka, Maharashtra and Jammu and Kashmir.

1. **Vidhan Parishad (Legislative Council) :** It cannot have more than 1/3rd of the total members of the Legislative Assembly and in case less than 40 members. But total membership varies according to the population of the state concerned. Like Rajya Sabha. Legislative Council cannot be dissolved.
2. **Vidhan Sabha (Legislative Assembly) :** Like Lok Sabha, it consists of directly elected representatives. In states where there is one House, the Legislative Assembly carry out all the functions of the legislature. It consists of not more than 500 and not less than 60 members. The strength varies as per the population of the state. The Assembly may be dissolved before five years, otherwise the normal term of the Assembly is of five years.
4. An MLA is a representative of the public. MLAs are directly elected by the people of the state through general election for a period of five years.

#### **Qualification :**

A person who wants to become a member of the Legislative Assembly of a state must fulfil the following requirements :

- He must be a citizen of India.
  - He must be above the age of 25 years.
  - He must not hold any post of profit under the state or Central Government.
  - He must not be mentally unstable or bankrupt.
5. **Election of MLA :** The Members of the Legislative Assemblies or MLAs are directly elected by the people. The Election Commission of India (EC) in consultation with Central and the State Government issues a notification in which the dates of the election are declared. The dates for filing the nomination forms, to withdraw the names, dates of voting and counting are made public. The voting takes place under the guidance of the Election Commission. After the voting and counting, the Election Commission declares the list of the elected representative. These representative

become MLAs and they form the Vidhan Sabha or the Legislative Assembly.

A constituency is a definite area from which all the voters living there choose their representatives i.e. MLAs. Every state of India is divided into a number of assembly constituencies. The elected MLAs actually represent these constituencies. These MLAs are associated with different political parties.

The Legislative Assembly of the state of Himachal Pradesh has 68 MLA constituencies.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

3

## Role of the Government in Health

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (iii) 3. (i)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. **Health** is one matter which is normally ignored.
  2. For running health facilities we need **doctors**, nurses and **professional** who can diagnose and cure **illness**.
  3. India has a large number of doctors, **hospitals** and **clinics**.
  4. At the district level, **district** hospitals are provided while large cities have **multi-speciality** hospitals.
  5. In urban areas many doctors run specialised nursing homes and offer **laboratories** for special facilities like **X-ray**.

#### C. State whether the following statements are true or false :

**Ans.** 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False.

#### D. Short Answer questions :

- Ans.**
1. Health is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity.
  2. Public health services include the whole chain of health clinics and hospitals operated by the government.
  3. In villages, the government provides a health centre with a nurse and village health worker working under the

- superintendence of doctors at the Primary Health Centre.
4. In urban area multi-speciality hospitals are the hospitals in which many specialised doctors are available at once place. They are specialised in their particular field.
  5. OPD means out patient Department.
  6. In 1996, the Kerala government made a drastic change. It gave 40% of state budget to Panchayats increase profits, the doctors at private health centres often prescribe more tests and medicines than are actually required. They also prefer to use expensive methods of treatment even when cheaper methods are available to make provision for water, food, women development and education. Working of schools and Anganwadis was ensured to solve specific problems of the village. Health centres have been improved, but shortage of medicines, insufficient hospital beds, shortage of doctors, etc. are some problems which still need to be addressed.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. When we think of health the first thing that comes to our mind is our ability to remain free of illness and injuries. However, health is a state of complete physical, mental and social well-being and not merely the absence of disease or infirmity. Apart from disease, we need to think of other factors that affect our health. For example, we could be prone to illness if we do not get enough food or live in cramped conditions. Mental and physical strain can also cause grave illness. So, we should all strive to remain in good health by practising clean habits.
2. In order to provide adequate healthcare it is necessary to provide health facilities like health centre, hospitals, laboratories for tests, blood banks, etc. For running these facilities we need qualified doctors, nurses and professionals who can diagnose and cure illness. Further even medicines and equipments are needed to cure patients. All these facilities are needed to provide adequate healthcare. In India, health is a matter of concern. There are strange contrasts so far as medical facilities in India are concerned. These may include :  
India has the largest number of medical colleges and

produces over 15000 doctors in a year. It is ironical that most of these doctors settle in urban areas and people of rural areas have to travel long distance to find a doctor.

In 1950, India had 2,717 hospitals which have grown to 18,218 hospitals now. Still however, about 5 lakh people die from tuberculosis every year while 2 million cases of malaria are reported.

People from abroad come to get medical treatment as we have some of the best hospitals in the world. India is still not able to provide clear water to all the diseases like diarrhoea, gastroenteritis, etc. are still dominant.

India is the fourth largest producer of medicines in the world. More than half of the children in India are due to malnutrition and shortage of medicines.

India has a large number of doctors, hospitals and clinics. There is a wide network of government hospitals and public healthcare throughout the country. The public healthcare provides healthcare to thousands of people throughout the country. With rapid inventions in the field of science and technology, medical science has seen an improvement in treatment. However, the picture is not very rosy.

3. The state government is responsible planning, carrying out and monitoring schemes to improve public health. It gets financial and technical help from the central government. Usually, local self-government bodies and NGOs are actively involved in efforts to improve public health.

Public health services include the whole chain of health clinics and hospitals operated by the government. All the hospitals are linked and both rural and urban centres cover treatment from common illness to special services. In villages, the government provides a health centre with a nurse and village health worker working under the superintendence of doctors at the Primary Health Centre (PHC). At the district level, district hospitals are provided while large cities have multi-speciality hospitals. These hospitals are called public as the government provides healthcare to all citizens and the resources required to operate these come from taxes paid by public. An important feature of this system is that the public healthcare comes for

free or at a low cost. Thus, Government takes care of health by preventing spreading of diseases like malaria, jaundice, chikengunya, diarrhoea, tuberculosis (TB) for effective implementation it is necessary to involve people in organization of programmes for this purpose. It is the duty of government to ensure right to life to all. For this it is essential that people get timely treatment especially during emergency situations.

Besides public health services, various private health services are also available. Many doctors run their own clinics. There are also many privately run hospitals and nursing homes. The private health services are good, but are found mostly in cities.

In urban areas many doctors specialised nursing homes and offer laboratories for special facilities like x-ray, etc. In addition, a large number of medicinal shops are available. In rural areas private doctors as Registered Medical Practitioners (MRP). Unlike public health service private health services are expensive and people have to pay a hefty amount of treatment, tests and medicines.

To increase profits, the doctors at private health centres often prescribe more tests and medicines than are actually required. They also prefer to use expensive methods of treatment even when cheaper methods available.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

4

Media and Democracy

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Question (MCQs) :**

**Tick (3) the correct answer :**

**Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (i)                      3. (i)

**B. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F) :**

**Ans.** 1. True                      2. False                      3. False                      4. True

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. **Press** is an important part of the mass media.
  2. **Democracy** is government by consent and not by force.
  3. **Political** parties organise meetings and demonstration.
  4. Advertisements at times can be **misleading**.

**D. Give reasons why :**

- Ans.**
1. We say that cinema is an effective means of mass communication because cinema helps in the formation of sound public opinion. They listen to all items, especially in news and elections results, very carefully and react sharply to them.
  2. The people organised public hearings (or Jan Sunwai) where anybody could come and have their say in contain matters.
  3. Social advertising is that type of advertisement which seeks to promote important social issues such as family planning, cancer awareness, respect for female child, communal harmony, national intrigation help for the disaster victim etc.

**E. Define the following :**

- Ans.**
1. **Media** : The means by which large number of people get information and entertainment are called media.
  2. **Mass Media** : Different agencies which help in contacting the masses and forming public opinion are called media/mass media.
  3. **RTI** : The Right to information Law means that people have the right to know everything that affects their lives directly or indirectly.
  4. **USP** : Advertising usually seeks to find a Unique Selling Proposition (USP) of any product and communicate it to the user.

**F. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. Advertising is the process of publishing a product or service, of trapping to sell a product or service by drawing people's attention to the product.
  2. Radio, Television, newspaper, cinema and internet.
  3. **Commercial Advertising**  
Comparatively a major portion of advertising is commercial advertising which is linked with buyers or consumers.



Buyers of consumer goods form major part of consumers who buy things either their own use or for their households.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The means by which large number of people get information and entertainment are called media. The media that can reach a very large number of people at the same time are called mass media.

Media play an important role in modern democracy. In the age of universal adult franchise every citizen above the choose their representatives. So both the ruling and the opposition parties continue to keep themselves in touch with the masses and try to win public opinion in their favour. As such in a democratic country like India, mass media or different methods to contact masses and influence their opinion have an importance of its own.

Moreover, media plays an important role in providing information about everything that is happening in a democratic country and keep the people alert agile.

Media also provides forum for discussion or debate, clears many points and plays a great part in creating right public opinion.

2. In the modern age of electronic media contribute significantly in the formulation of public opinion. Radio television are both important mass media which play a vital role in the formation and expression of public opinion. Unlike press, the radio and television reach even the illiterates and help them to form their opinion. They listen to all items, especially the news and election results, very carefully and react sharply to them.

In the modern age of electronic media contribute significantly in the formulation of public opinion. Radio television are both important mass media which play a vital role in the formation and expression of public opinion. Unlike press, the radio and television reach even the illiterates and help them to form their opinion. They listen to all items, especially the news and election results, very carefully and react sharply to them.

Not only radio and television but cinema too helps in the formation of sound public opinion. They listen to all items,

especially the news and elections results, very carefully and react sharply to them. Along with stories, music, natural surroundings and lot of entertainment, many social problems are put before the audience and after many ups and downs, these are ultimately solved to their manner that without exerting much pressure, the right message is conveyed to the masses. With a little government check, cinema can help in solving social problems.

3. The Right to Information Law means that people have the right to know everything that affects their lives directly or indirectly. If a person is involved in a court case, he should be provided all the documents concerning his case, so that he can know why he was involved in a false case and why he is being punished for no fault of his. A poor villager wants to seek information as to why the amount being sanctioned by the central for the state government has failed to provide him any financial help or provide employment opportunities for him and his co villagers, how and where such an amount was spent or not spent or was pocketed by different officials. Certain aware citizens among them would ask for information about the expenditure receipts and even at the audit reports.

By this Act the people got the right to information in all spheres of government. The people were allowed to obtain certain copies of any document, particularly those concerning records of expenditure like bills, vouchers and muster-rolls.

The Right to Information on its own caused a change in the power. The people organised public hearings (or Jan Sunwai) where anybody could come and have their say in certain matters. These offered an open platform where information and its analysis revealed the who, the how and the why of various misdeeds and gave courage to the exploited to bring their grievances in the open.

The right to information gives any citizen and opportunity to check the (mis) deeds, of any authority by personally examining details. Such a right had a dramatic effect on the prevalent modes of brazen corruption.

In spite of opposition from government officials, the

government of Rajasthan finally gave into the people's demands. It passed a law on the right to information in 2000. Several other states also passed their own laws on the right to information. Ultimately, in 2005, the central government passed the Right to Information Act. This act has effect all over the country, except in Jammu and Kashmir.

4. Advertising is the process of publishing a product or service, of trying to sell a product or service by drawing people's attention to the product. Advertisement focus on all the good points on the product to make appear as attractive as possible, so that people are tempted to buy it.

Advertising is a means of communication between the seller and the buyer. Sellers and between the seller and the buyer. Sellers find advertising the best and quickest way to reach the widest section of consumer. Not only do advertisement inform us about the product, they impress, inspire and influence us to go and buy them. Often the success or failure of a product depends on the effectiveness of the advertising strategy.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

5

## Markets Around Us

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (ii)                      3. (iii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. **Market** is a place where the buyers and sellers meet.
  2. The place where goods are traded in bulk is called a **wholesale market**.
  3. **Retailers** and **wholesaler** are middlemen who buy and resell goods for a profit.
  4. The market from where we buy wheat is called the **neighbourhood** market.
  5. The **Vendor** brings fruits and vegetables to our very door-step.

**C. Match the following :**

**Ans.**

**A**

1. A chemist
2. A wholesaler
3. An agent
4. A grocer
5. A retailer

**B**

- i. Large stocks of things
- ii. Gets his commission
- iii. Sugar
- iv. Small stocks of things
- v. Medicines

**D. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

**Ans.**

1. False
2. True
3. True
4. False

**E. Short Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. A market is a system that enables buyers and sellers to exchange good and service.

**Important factors :**

- (i) Availability of thing
  - (ii) Convenience
  - (iii) Quality
  - (iv) Credit
  - (v) Income cycle
  - (vi) Price.
2. Neighbourhood Markets consist of all those permanent shops that cater to the shops, stationery, hardware, shops that sell ready-made garments, vegetables, etc. The owners of permanent shops have to pay rent, electricity bills, phone bills, etc. for their shops. Hence they charge higher prices.
  3. **Factors which Affect People's Access to Markets**  
People's access to markets depends upon many factors. The chief among them are, however, the following.
    - (i) **Availability of Things :** The availability of different things is the factor which affects people's access to the market. If different things of daily use—fruits, vegetable, groceries, milk, butter, drinks, breads, etc. are not available in a particular market, nobody would go to such a market. There should be a chemist shop, a grocery, a stationery, a doctor's clinic, a sweet seller's shop, a cloth merchant and a tailor's shop. If there is a post office, a police station, a hospital there, it will be an added attraction.
    - (ii) **Convenience :** Then such a market should be quite nearby so that the customers go there at their convenience. If it is a far off people would avoid going to such a market. People won't like to live in such a colony where no market exists or if it exists quite far off.
    - (iii) **Quality :** Almost all customers prefer to buy things of good

quality. If any market has to flourish it must maintain its standard and provide things of good quality to the customers. People would not compromise with any shopkeeper who supplies goods of inferior quality to them as such things can play havoc with their health as well as the well-being of their families, especially their children.

- (iv) **Credit** : There are some people who can buy things by paying cash. But certainly a majority of the people, especially the service class people, who buy things on credit and pay the amount in the next month when they get their prey. Credit facility would certainly add to the popularity of the market.
4. **Super markets** : Super markets are very big, usually air conditioned, shopping complex that have shops selling a variety of goods and services. But it costs a lot of money to maintain a shop in a mall.
5. **Retailers** : Retailers sell goods in small lots from fixed locations such as shops, directly to the consumer. There are the shops from which most people buy things for direct consumption. Retailers represent the end of the supply chain.

**F. Long answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. **The Wholesale Market**

There is the wholesale market from where the retail shopkeepers bring different articles and further sell it to their customers. The wholesalers keep the stocks of different articles in bulk because different shopkeepers buy things not in small numbers but in dozens.

2. **Role of Intermediaries**

Have you thought that from producer to customers many intermediaries are involved. Sometimes this chain is limited to two but mostly these are there, four and even more intermediaries. If the farmer brings his produce in the market he naturally gets more price for his produce. But in such a case he has to arrange for the transport of his articles in the local market, then at the wholesale market he has to take the help of the selling agent who actions the produce among different buyers. In this way he can sell his produce in a single day and return to his village at the earliest. But if

the produce in another state then one main intermediary comes in his way. He may be a wholesaler or an agent who buys the farmer's produce in bulk and himself arranges for the transport of such articles to distant wholesale-markets.

In anyway the intermediaries play an important part in the fruit, vegetables and even in the grain market. Thus when different things come to us don't forget that between the producer and the customer various intermediaries are involved. The chain is like this :

- The producer who produces different goods.
  - The agent who acts as a link between the produce and the wholesale.
  - The wholesaler who keeps a large stock of wholesale articles.
  - The retailer who get things in small quantities from the wholesaler.
  - The customer is the last in the chain who pays the final price for the product bought.
  - This is the market phenomena, the earlier we understand it is better.
3. A wholesale market it is place where producers bring their goods to be sold. This can be anything from electrical goods to vegetables. They purchase or sell the goods in bulk. Each produce has a different wholesale market.

**Retailers :** Retailers sell goods in small lots from fixed locations such as shops, directly to the consumer. There are the shops from which most people buy things for direct consumption. Retailer either buy the goods in bulk directly from the manufacturer or from the wholesaler. They then sell the goods in smaller quantities to the ultimate consumers. Retailers represent the end of the supply chain. So the retail price of a product is higher than wholesale price.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (iii).

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
- Gender refers to the **biologically** determined differences between the two sexes.
  - The socio-economic relations between men and women are largely **unequal**.
  - Development policies and approaches need to be **non-discriminatory** and **effective**.
  - The Indian constitution grants women **equal rights** with men.

**C. State whether the following statements are true or false :**

**Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False.

**D. Short answer questions :**

- Ans.**
- Gender equality exists when both females and males have equal opportunities. In effect, this means that everyone, male or female, can pursue a broad range of interests, subjects, careers and lifestyles.  
Gender equality at school can be improved in quality if :  
the school is a place where girls and boys feel safe, are safe and where they are respected and valued.  
the school recognizes its active role in the construction of gender and is committed to practises that effect gender equality all students have access to an effective and rewarding education.
  - There is a traditional theory explaining the emergence of separate roles for women and men. The theory pointed at the fact that there were biologically determined differences between females and males.  
Gender relations are not biologically determined; rather. They are based on different relations of power in society and in family. Gender does not mean 'sex'. Sex is determined by genes and biology. Sex is used to refer to biological and

reproductive characteristics. We are born as a member of the male sex or the female sex.

Gender is a pattern of behaviours recognized as 'feminine' or 'masculine'. It is a socially constructed, learned behaviour accordingly. Gender differs between societies and across the social, clinic and cultural groups within societies.

Some people believe that male and female behaviours are different because they are determined by biological features. They view of 'natural' difference is called biological determinism. It insists that certain behaviours are justified and unchangeable because 'boys will be boys' or 'girls will be girls'.

3. **Gender Role**

A gender role is a set pattern of behaviour that a man or a woman is expected to follow in a society. Gender roles may vary from society to society. In any given society they may also change over time.

A person becomes aware of his or her gender role as he or she interacts with other members of the society, in the family, in the community, in school and in public places.

**E. Long answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. We do not agree with this statement. Children get their first lessons in school life from their family members. Usually, it is expected that children will play the role of parents in future. So, a girl is usually encouraged to behave like her mother and a boy is encouraged to behave like his father.

According to tradition, girls are expected to grow up and marry, have children, do the housework and take care of the family. Hence, girls are brought up to be kind and gentle. And they are usually encouraged to develop skills such as cooking and sewing. Boys are expected to work outside home and earn money to support the family. Hence, boys are encouraged to do well in sports and studies so that they become strong and intelligent. However, these gender roles are not strictly followed. There are many families in which girls are encouraged to pursue studies and work outside home.

2. **Discrimination against women in India**

Major areas of discrimination against women in India :



- (i) **Lack of education** : In villages, families are less likely to educate girls more than boys. Girls are often made to give up education and stay at home to help out in the housework.
- (ii) **Malnutrition** : India has exceptionally high rates of child malnutrition. Tradition in India requires that women eat last and least throughout their lives, even when pregnant. Malnourished women give birth to malnourished children.
- (iii) **Poor Health** : Females receive less health care than males. Many women die during childbirth due to complications arising from the lack of a proper diet and nutrition.
- (iv) **Powerlessness** : While women are guaranteed equality under the effect in the face of prevailing traditions. Women lack power to decide who they will marry, and are often married off at a very young age. Legal loopholes are used to deny women inheritance rights.
- (v) **Mistreatment** : The women have been mistreated. Lack of awareness and social education is the root cause of dowry deaths, killing of the girl child and selling of young girls into marriages.
- (vi) **Overwork** : Women work for longer hours and their work is more difficult than men's yet their work is unrecognized. India has a long history of activism for women's welfare and rights, which has increasingly focused on women's economic rights. A range of government programmes have been launched to increase economic opportunity for women.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.



- nature and are called natural resources.
3. A gift of nature can become a resource by the people of that region having sufficient knowledge, skill and technology to process it and use it for satisfying their needs.
  4. Biotic resources are obtained from the biosphere and have life such as human beings, flora, fauna and fisheries, livestock, etc. Abiotic resources, e.g. rocks and metals.
  5. Resource planning means utilisation of country's resources for different development activities, in accordance with national priorities.

**F. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

**1. Natural Resources**

Our Earth has a large variety of rocks, minerals, soils, land, vegetation, animals, water, air and sunshine. These are useful to mankind. Therefore, these are resources. As the above mentioned resources are provided by nature they are called natural resources. A lump of coal is a resource, not because of its shape, colour, composition or scarcity, but because it functions for satisfying a human need. Pre-historic man did not know its use. But to modern man it is a resource. Other than being used as a fuel, it is used in the production, etc., after being processed (not in raw form).

Natural resources acquire value when they are put to use by humans to satisfy their day-to-day needs. For example, a waterfall, is a gift of nature. With the use of simple technology, it was used to drive a water wheel to grind flour. Later the force of falling water was used to generate electricity. The waterfall may be further useful if the spot is developed as a tourist site.

Thus, a gift of nature can become a resource the people of that region have sufficient knowledge, skill and technology to process it and use it for satisfying their needs.

Human beings interact with nature through technology and create institutions to fulfil their needs. Gifts of nature, such as air, water, soil, forests and minerals, as well as man-made creations, such as building houses, transport etc. are resources because they satisfy our needs. Human beings are also a resource because they have the ability, skill and knowledge to find new uses of the existing resources and to

find new resources. A thing becomes a resource only when its utility has been identified, e.g. oil has existed on the Earth for million of years, but it became a resource only when man learnt to use it for transport and other uses. So when a thing becomes useful, it becomes a resource.

2. All resources should be used judiciously or wisely. Not only do we need to assess them, we should also preserve and protect them, avoiding wastage. The wise use of resources by avoiding misuse is known as conservation of resources. It has been observed that developed countries use more resources than developing countries. Economic development leads to greater wealth and hence consumption levels step up. Increased population and the rising demand for material goods and comforts has already caused degradation of many valuable resources and extinction of certain species of plants, birds and animals. The quality of air, water and land has been affected badly because of misuse and overuse. In the name of development, man has exploited the available resources thoughtlessly and today, his very own existence is under threat.

### **Sustainable Development**

Sustainable economic development means development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not destroy the ability of the future generations to meet their needs. Therefore, it is our duty to ensure that :

- (i) All uses of renewable resources are sustained.
- (ii) The diversity of life on the Earth is conserved.
- (iii) The population and distribution of rare and threatened species should be increased.
- (iv) Damage to natural environment should be minimized.
- (v) Recycling of reusable goods should be increased.
- (vi) Alternative resource is used, if made available.

Some principles of Sustainable Developments are suggested :

- (i) Respect and care for all forms of life to achieve a dyanmic result.
- (ii) Improve the quality of human life through interaction with all the nation.



- The region wherever trees grow close to each other is called **forest**.
- National Park** and **Wildlife santuanes** have been started to preserve the genetic diversity.

**C. State whether the following Statements are True (T) or False (F):**

**Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. True

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Land Resources**

Land covers less than 30% of the Earth's surface and of this small percentage, a large part is not habitable because it is ice or snow covered, too rugged or steep, climatically unsuitable, waterlogged or forested or a desert.

Land is a very important and a limited resources. It meets all the needs of food, clothing, housing for humans. It provides habitat for animal life, regulates water and ground water, minerals and fossil fuels.

- Preventing soil erosion is called soil conservation.

**Methods for soil conservation :**

(i) Afforestation (ii) Mulching (iii) Contour Barriers (iv) Rock Dam (v) Intercropping (vi) Shelter Belts.

- Tall trees in the forests is regarded as representative form of vegetation of a region because they require more space.
- Tropical rainforests and coniferous forest are the two types of evergreen forests.
- We conserve forests by preventing cutting trees and saving wildlife.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Cause of Land Degradation**

Land degradation takes place due to the following reasons :

- Change in Landforms :** Man has the ability to ground high hills fill up deep depressions. Dams across rivers, mining and construction of houses, bridges and roads affect landforms directly.
- Overgrazing :** Overgrazing by domestic animals on a large scale has degraded the land, by removing the vegetation. Overgrazing is the main cause of land degradation in states

of Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra. Overgrazing is the major cause of land degradation.

- (iii) **Degradation by Mining and Quarrying** : More than 5,500 mines and quarries are operating in India. The dumping of mineral wastes and abandoned mines are degrading and defacing the land.
- (iv) **Degradation by Industrial Effluents** : Indiscriminate discharge of effluents has led to land degradation and making the land unfit for cultivation.
- (v) **Degradation by Industrial Dust** : Fly ash from thermal power plants and dust generated by cement and ceramic industries have also led to land degradation.

### **Conservation of Land Degradation**

The following steps can go a long way in conservation and reclamation of land :

- i. Afforestation and control on overgrazing.
  - ii. Plantation of shelter belts of plants.
  - iii. Growing of thorny bushes to stabilize the sand dunes.
  - iv. Proper discharges and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes.
  - v. Environmental friendly mining.
2. Soil is essential for the growth of plants. It is an important natural resource as the production of food and other crops is dependent on its fertility. Soil may be conserved by the following methods :

**Afforestation** : The humus in soil is a substance obtained from plant and animal remains. Therefore, planting of trees, shrubs and grasses provide base for forming humus.

**Farming Techniques** : Soil conservation friendly farming techniques include—contour ploughing, strip cropping, terracing and other techniques. Strip cropping means, planting of alternate rows of different kinds of crops instead of leaving the land fallow. In Contour ploughing farmers plough across a slope along the line of the field in circular manner. In terracing, wide flat rows are made in step-like manner. The terraces hold rain water and prevent soil from getting washed down the slope.

**Mulching** : It is the covering of bare ground between plants, with a layer of organic matter like straw, to retain soil

moisture.

**Contour Barriers** : It is the using of stone, grass, soil to build barriers along contours.

**Rock Dam** : Rocks are piled up to slow down flow of water. It prevents gullies and further soil erosion.

**Intercropping** : Different crops are grown in alternate rows and are sown at different times to protect the soil from rain wash.

### 3. Conservation of Water

It has become essential to conserve water and improve its quality. Rapid growth of population has reduced the availability of water. If urgent steps are not taken to conserve water, by the middle of the 21st century, most countries of the world, especially India, will face acute water scarcity.

Some of measures that can be taken for water conservation are :

**Efficient Use of Water** : Efficient and economical use of water, specially to prevent wastage is the best way of conserving water.

**Sprinkler Irrigation** : In place of canals or irrigation through open channels, sprinkler irrigation should be adopted in developing countries.

Recycling and Treatment of Effluents at its sources is also an important method of conservation.

**Water Harvesting** : It involves artificial recharge of underground water by allowing rainwater to seep into the soil.

### 4. Forest Conversation

Many countries of the world are taking steps to protect their forests and increase the land under forests.

Cutting of trees is being checked seriously and efforts are being made to plant adequate trees through afforestation programs.

The wasteful slash and burn method of shifting cultivation practised by people in tropical rainforests, is being discouraged.

Many forested areas have been declared as protected or reserved and national parks and wildlife sanctuaries have



been set up. Biosphere reserves have been established in various habitats all over the world.

Society forestry is becoming popular in the world. People are being made aware, vigilant and cautious about the depleting forest and wildlife resources. Trees are planted on space available on farms, canal banks and community land.

5. The Himalayan mountains support a wide variety of animals, which also vary according to altitude. Ibex, shrew and tapi are found in the Himalayas. In Ladakh, Yak, an ox-like Tibetan mammal is found. One-horned rhinoceros are found and the spotted deer are also found in the Himalayas. The snow leopard and less panda are located in the upper reaches of Himalayas. The lion is found in the Gir Forests in Gujarat. Forest birds found in India, include parakeet pigeons, hornbills, cranes and sunbills. The black buck, the great Indian bustard and the Indian gazelle are found in these habitats.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

3

## Natural Resources : Minerals and Power Resources

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions :

Ans. 1. (ii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (ii)                      4. (iii).

#### B. State whether the following statements are True or False :

Ans. 1. True                      2. True                      3. False  
4. False                      5. False                      6. True.

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. All minerals have a definite **chemical** composition.  
2. Metallic minerals are mostly found in the **igneous and metamorphic** rocks.  
3. **Haematite** is the best quality of iron ore.  
4. Bauxite is the ore of **Aluminium**.  
5. Geothermal energy is the **renewable** source of power.  
6. **Anthracite** contains more than 90 per cent carbon and burns without smoke.

7. About 65 per cent resources of petroleum are around the **Persian Gulf.**

**D. Match the following :**

**Ans.**

- |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Largest producer and exporter of mica            | → | 1. Railways and iron and steel industry |
| 2. A non-conventional source of energy              | → | 2. India                                |
| 3. Half of the total coal production is consumed by | → | 3. Saudi Arabia                         |
| 4. A precious metal                                 | → | 4. Nuclear Energy                       |
| 5. Largest producer of oil in the world             | → | 5. Gold                                 |

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. **Properties of Minerals**

The important properties of minerals are as follows :

- (i) **Hardness :** It refers to the resistance to scratching, breakage and cleavage. Scale of a minerals' hardness is measured by Mohs scale.
  - (ii) **Solubility :** Several minerals like salt are soluble but quartz is insoluble.
  - (iii) **Colour :** Colour is mineral's most precious attribute. Some minerals are colourless, other are green, blue, pink, and white.
2. **Iron :** Iron is the most widely used metal. It is the backbone of modern civilization. It is a metal of universal use. Iron ore is available in abundance and can be produced at a low cost. Its demand is increasing, as it can be hammered, rolled, cast, drawn into wire, welded and combined with other metals to form alloys.
3. Mineral oil is also known as 'Petroleum'. Petro in Latin means 'rock' and Oleum means 'oil'. Petroleum is obtained from sedimentary rocks. The total worldwide reserves of oil are estimated at 1000 billion barrels. About two-thirds of this supply is contributed by the countries of the Persian Gulf. Presently, Saudi Arabia is the largest producer of oil in the world. The gulf countries along with Russia, Venezuela, Mexico, Libya and Nigeria account for nearly 90 per cent of world's known reserves. Oil is also found in the USA, UK,

Norway, Denmark, Germany and Netherlands. Oil was first discovered in India, Digboi (Assam) and later at Mumbai High (Maharashtra).

4. The distribution of mineral resources in India is highly uneven. The Northern Plains of India hardly have any mineral resources, while the Chhota Nagpur Plateau and its surrounding areas possess one of the largest concentration of mineral deposits in the world.
5. Coal, mineral oil and natural gas are minerals of organic origin. They are called fossil fuels because they were formed from plant and animal remains that got buried under the soil, millions of years ago. They got converted into hydrocarbons in the absence of sunlight. Mineral oil and natural gas are generally found in sedimentary rock that were once under shallow seas. Decomposed remains of marine organisms, animals and other marine creatures were buried and converted into oil and gas under heat and pressure of overlying rocks. The oil and gas got squeezed under the pressure of overlying rocks.

#### F. Long Answer Questions :

Ans.

1. Iron ore is found in abundance and can be produced at low cost. The extraction of minerals from the Earth is called mining.  
Aluminium is in great Demand due to its lightness, strength, resistance to rusting and electrical conductivity. Manganese is used in steel making and manufacture of alloys.  
Copper is mainly used in electrical transmission and making of alloys like brass, bronze, German silver, etc.
2. **Coal** : Coal occurs in layers of varying thickness between the beds of sedimentary rocks. The thickness of these layers depends on the nature of the forest that got buried to form this coal million years ago. Four different varieties of coal are available. They are :  
**Peat** : It is a brownish substance and burns with difficulty, giving out a lot of smoke.  
**Lignite** : It contains only 40 per cent of carbon and a large amount of moisture. The total reserves are about 15 per cent.  
**Bituminous** : It is a soft coal and contains about 70 per cent

carbon and burns without smoke. The total reserves are about 5 per cent.

**Anthracite** : It contains more than 90 per cent carbon and burns without smoke. The total reserves are about 5 per cent.

3. **Conservation of mineral and power resources**

Minerals are exhaustible resources. Their demand is increasing. They need to be conserved. Increased demand and continuous mining of metallic, non-metallic and power resources may lead to their exhaustion. It is therefore necessary to use them economically. The following steps can be helpful :

1. Efficient utilization of resources.
2. Improvement in the techniques of extraction and purification,
3. Recycling of resources,
4. Saving of mines from collapse.
5. Use of alternative sources.
6. If implemented properly, the conservation of minerals and power resources will ensure a better economy for the future generations.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions :**

**Ans.** 1. (i)      2. (ii)      3. (i)      4. (iii)      5. (i)

**B. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. True                      2. False                      3. True  
4. False                      5. False.

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. Subsistence agriculture is practised in **India**.
  2. Tea is a chief crop of **Commercial** agriculture.
  3. Synthetic fibres are obtained from plant material called **cellulose**.
  4. **Rice** plant is known as paddy.
  5. India is the leading producer of **Sugarcane**.

**D. Short Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Shifting cultivation and intensive subsistence agriculture are two types of tradition agriculture practice.
2. **Shifting Cultivation** : It is called Jhuming in north-east India. The forest communities cultivate a plot of land and grow crops for a few years. The plot is then abandoned as soil loses its fertility in favour of another piece of new forest land. The method is also called 'slash and burn method'.
3. **Plantation Agriculture** : It was first introduced in Asia and Africa by the British during the colonial period. They are mostly owned by local people or the government. In recent years, machines are being introduced to mechanise certain operations.
4. Jute is considered as a golden fibre in the Indian sub-continent. It is a long soft, shiny fibre that resists stretching. It is used for making packing materials like carpets, ropes, bags, mats and many other products.

**E. Long Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Soil and climate conditions and relief determine the patterns of agriculture. Agriculture includes crops and livestock. Crops in human usage are foodgrains, vegetable, fruits and other varieties. Animal products in human usage include meat, milk and milk products, animals hide, fish.
2. **Mixed Farming** : When livestock are reared along with crop cultivation, it is known as Mixed Farming. The farmers grow cereals and vegetables with fodder, oats, maize and root crops for their livestock. Equal emphasis is given to crop cultivation and rearing cattle, sheep, pigs and poultry. Crop rotation retains soil fertility. Crop residues provide hay for the livestock in the winter season. Mixed farming is generally followed in densely populated areas of Europe, eastern North America, Argentina, southeast Australia and South Africa. Efficient methods of cultivation, quick means of transport and a ready market in the nearby areas ensure good financial returns for the farmers. Fruits, vegetables and flowers are sold to the nearby urban markets.
3. **Conditions for Cultivation of Rice**  
**Temperature** : Minimum of 20°C at the time of germination and 27°C to 30°C at the time of growth.

**Rainfall :** Between 100 cm to 200 cm. Irrigation is required where rainfall is less.

**soil :** It grows well in loamy soil.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

5

## Industries – An Introduction

### Exercise

**A. State whether the following sentences are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. True                      4. False.

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. Industry refers to the production or manufacturing of goods.
  2. Private sector industries are owned by **Private** individual or their **groups**.
  3. Small-scale industries play an important role in the **developing** countries.
  4. Presence of a **markets** is essential so that goods can be sold.
  5. Sugar is made from **Sugarcane** and **Sugarbeet**.

**C. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F):**

**Ans.** 1. False                      2. True                      3. True  
4. False                      5. True

**D. Short Answer Question :**

**Ans.** 1. **The stages of production :**

- (i) Procurement of raw material.                      (iii) Distribution.  
(ii) Processing.

2. Sugar and Textile Industry.

3. Eastern part of North America, Western and Central Europe, Eastern Europe, Eastern Asia.

4. **Industry based on Raw Material :**

- (i) Agro based industries.  
(ii) Mineral-based industries.  
(iii) Marine-based industries. (iv) Forest-based industries.

5. A region is known as an industrial region if number of industries are located close to each other.

## E. Long Answer Questions :

Ans.

### 1. (i) On the basis of Source of Raw Material

Industries can be agro-based, mineral-based, marine-based and forest-based, depending on the type of raw material they use.

- (ii) **Agro-based industries** : They use plants and animal-based product as raw materials. Food processing, cotton textile, vegetable oil, dairy products, sugar, tea, coffee, leather industries are example of agro-based industries.
- (iii) **Mineral-based industries** : They are primary industries that use mineral ores as their raw material. The products of these industries are used as raw materials by other industries e.g. iron and steel, cement, aluminium, machine tools, petrochemical etc.
- (iv) **Marine-based industries** : They use products from the sea and oceans as raw materials. Industries processing seafood or manufacturing fish-oil are some examples.
- (v) **Forest-based industries** : They utilise forest produce as raw materials. The industries associated with forests are pulp and paper, pharmaceuticals, furniture and buildings.

### 2. Factors Affecting the Location of Industries

Regions that have conditions favourable for the establishment and growth of industries develop into large industrial areas. Some important factors that influence the location of industries are :

- Supply of raw materials should be regular and adequate. For example, 10 quintals of sugarcane are needed to manufacture 1 quintal of sugar, hence sugar mills are located in areas where sugarcane is grown. Many industries in India need a continuous supply of raw materials such as jute, rubber, oil seeds iron ore, coal etc.
- Continuous power supply at affordable rates help in the growth of an industry.
- Efficient, skilled and cheap labour is also an essential factor. For example, electronic industry in Japan, utensil industry in Jagadhari and Moradabad and glass industry in Ferozabad in India have developed due to presence of skilled labour.
- Quick means of transport are necessary not only to

carry raw materials to the factories but also to carry finished goods to the market. The concentration of large industries in the Great Lakes Region has been caused by cheap means of water transportation provided by the lakes. Almost all large industrial towns in Japan are port town. The cheap water transport has led to concentration of jute mills in the Hooghly valley in India and of many industries in the Rhine valley of Europe.

- Huge amount of capital is needed for buying raw materials, for purchasing machines and for paying wages to labour.
- Presence of a market is essential so that the goods produced can be sold. The size of the market is closely related to the purchasing power of the people.
- New technology is needed to improve and help the commodity to stand in competition with other countries.

Modern industries need the support of the government to flourish.

Political stability is also needed to help growth of industries.

3. India has the largest iron ore reserves in the world and has a good supply of all the raw material necessary for the iron and steel industry. The country has sufficient coal, limestone, dolomite, manganese and other various ferro-alloys except nickel and molybdenum. Another advantage is that all the raw material are found in close proximity. However, coal reserves are limited to last only till the turn of the century unless it is used very wisely. Labour is readily available. We have a good market within the country. India is developing a lot of infrastructure, industrial machines, housing buildings, bridges, etc. which also help in growth of the iron and steel industry.

India produced some 30 million tonnes of steel in 2002. Before Independence there was only one steel plant in India. TISCO (Tata Iron and Steel Company) and production was one million tonnes.

4. Eight industrial belts can be identified in India :  
(i) **Mumbai-Pune region** : From Thane to Pune including adjoining districts of Nasik and Sholapur.



(ii) **Hugli region** : From Bansbaria in the north to Birlanagar in the south.

(iii) **Bangalore-Tamil Nadu belt** : From Bangalore to all sorts of Tamil Nadu except Villupuram.

(iv) **Gujarat region** : Extending from Ahmedabad and Vadodara in the south to Jamnagar in the west.

(v) **Chota Nagpur region** : Extending over Jharkhand, Orissa and western part of West Bengal.

(vi) **Vishakhapatnam-Guntur region** : From the district of Vishakhapatnam to Kurnool and Prakasam districts.

(vii) **Delhi-Guragon-Meerut region** : Extending over Delhi, Guragon, Faridabad, Agra, Mathura, Ghaziabad, Modi Nagar Meerut, Sonipat, Panipat and Ambala.

(viii) **Kollam-Thiruvananthapuram region** : Spread over Alappuzha, Ernakulam, Alwaye, Kollam and Thiruvananthapuram districts. (Locate these districts mentioned on the map of India in your atlas.)

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Human Resources

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions :**

**Ans.** 1. (ii) 2. (iii) 3. (i) 4. (iii) 5. (iii).

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

**Ans.** 1. About 60 per cent of world's people stay in just **10** countries.  
2. Himalayas, Alps and Andes have very **less** Population.  
3. The population of United is growing **rapidly**.  
4. The Ministry of Human Resource Development was created in **1985**.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. False 4. False 5. True

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.** 1. The skilled population of a country is called its human resource.  
2. Human resources are important for a country because a skilled human resource contribute to the development of the

- country.
3. Areas with fertile soil support a large population because the land is fit for cultivation.
  4. Sex ratio means the ratio between males and females. It is shown as the number of females per thousand males. It gives an information about the extent of equality between males and females in a society at given time.

**E. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans. 1. Population Change**

The number of people living in an area does not remain the same. Many factors influence the changes in population.

- High difference between birth rate and death rate is the cause of population growth.
- Migration of people.
- Rising standard of living.
- Political and socio-religious factors.
- Better health and nutrition leading to a longer life span.
- In the past, large number of children were born, but they died early too, because there were no health facilities. There were frequent floods and droughts and sufficient food was not available for the people. Farmers could not produce enough to meet the food requirements of all the people. Consequently, increase of population was very low. In 1820, the world's population was 1 billion. In 1970, it reached 3 billion, and in 2006, it reached 6.5 billion.

This is often called population explosion. The main reason for the growth of population was better health-care and medicines with sufficient food supply. It reduced the number of deaths, while the number of births remained fairly high. By 2025 the population of the world is expected to increase to 8525 million.

**Birth rate :** The number of live births per 1,000 people.

**Death rate :** The number of deaths per 1,000 people.

Natural Growth Rate

= No. of birth -

No. of deaths/per 1000 people

The difference between the birth rate and death rate of a country is called the natural growth rate.

2. Population composition refers to the structure of the composition. It helps us to know how many of them are male or female, which group they belong to, how educated they are and what type of occupation they are employed in, what is their income level and health condition. An interesting way of studying the composition of population is by looking at the Population Pyramid also called age, sex pyramid. A population pyramid shows :

Total population divided into various age groups, e.g. 5 to 9 year, 8-10 to 14 years etc.

The percentage of the total population is subdivided into males and females in each of these groups.

The shape of the population pyramid tells us about the people living in that particular country. The number of children below 15 years are shown at the bottom and indicates about the level of births. The size of the top shown the number of aged people (about 65 years) and even reflects the number of deaths. The population pyramid even helps us to know the dependents population. There are two groups of dependents—young dependents (aged below 15 years) and elderly dependents (aged over 65 years). Those of working age between 15 and 64 are the working population.

3. **Distribution of Population :** The way in which people are spread across the Earth's surface is called the pattern of population distribution. The population of the world is characterised by uneven distribution. The spatial distribution of population of more than 7 billion people in 2011 over the total geographic area of 136 million square kilometres of land is marked by many contrasts. Areas of South-east Asia and Europe are more crowded. Few people live in deserts, forests and high latitude area. 3/4th of the world population lives in Asia and Africa. 60% of the world's population stays in 10 most populous countries. Many factors contribute to this extremely uneven spatial distribution of population.

4. **Factors Affecting Distribution of Population**

There are several factors which control the distribution of population. No single factor can over control population

distribution. All the factors work in combination to control population distribution.

- (i) **Topography** : Plains have highest concentration of population due to flat topography, which is suitable for agriculture, industries and development of transport. Plateaus are less populated and mountains have lowest concentration of population, e.g. Himalayas, Alps, Andes have very less population. In India, the Northern fertile plains are thickly populated because of rich fertile soil, favourable climate and employment opportunities.
- (ii) **Climate** : Regions which have extremely cold or hot climate or have less rainfall are thinly populated, e.g. Sahara desert and polar regions. In India, very few people live in Rajasthan due to very hot and dry climate. Regions which have monsoon climate with abundant rainfall are heavily populated.
- (iii) **Fertile soil** : Areas with fertile soil support a large population, because the land is fit for cultivation, e.g. fertile plains of the Ganga and Brahmaputra in India, Hwang-Ho in China, and the Nile in Egypt are densely populated.
- (iv) **Availability of water** : People prefer to live in areas where water is easily available. The river valleys are densely populated while deserts have sparse population.
- (v) **Minerals** : Most of the industries are located in places where minerals are easily available. These places are more populated, e.g.. the states of Bihar and Orissa are thickly populated.
- (vi) **Culture Factor** : Places with religious and cultural significance have more population e.g. Varanasi, Jerusalem, Vatican city etc.
- (vii) **Social factor** : People tend to move to those places which have better education, housing and health facilities, e.g. Delhi.
- (viii) **Employment** : Industrial areas provide employment opportunities. Large number of people migrate to these places from villages and small cities. Areas like Chhotanagpur, Mumbai in India and Osaka in Japan have high density of population because they offer good opportunity of employment industries and other fields.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

1

## HISTORY

### When, Where and How?

#### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (iii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. In **1453** the modern period began around the 18th century.
  2. Aurangzeb died in the year **1707**.
  3. The Battle of **Plassey** and **Buxar** made the England masters of Bengal.
  4. India became independent in **1947**.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. True 2. True 3. False 4. True

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. India in the 18th century was largely plagued by political instability. The death of Aurangzeb and incompetence of his successors brought about a virtual disintegration of the Mughal Empire. Many provincial kingdoms, such as a Awadh, Bengal and Hyderabad declared their independence. These were known as succession states. Rajputs became powerful. The Rajput ruler Sawai Raja Jai Singh built the city of Jaipur. The Marathas gained prominence under the Peshwas until they lost power to Ahmed Shah Abdali in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761. The Sikhs Third Battle of Panipat established their independent state under Maharaja Ranjit Singh.
  2. Around the 18th century, a number of significant events took place in the world. One of the most important events of this time was the Industrial Revolution. It started in Britain and gradually spread to the several other European countries. It is called a Revolution because of its impact on technology, society, economy and culture in the late 18th and early 19th centuries. These changes came about as a

result of the emergence of an economy based on industry and machine manufacture.

3. Industrial Revolution led to imperialism for making the political and economical system of a country.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The advantages of sources for the modern period are that they are found in abundance and are also well preserved.

The main sources for the modern period of Indian history are as follows.

Primary Sources include archaeological remains, original documents, photographs, newspapers, magazines, pamphlets, and videotapes.

Secondary Sources include reports, reviews, articles and printed books on primary sources.

The sources for studying the modern period of Indian history are varied.

Archaeological sources include the buildings scattered in different parts of the country such as the Gateway of India, India Gate, Parliament House and the Rashtrapati Bhavan.

Original documents such as government orders and official correspondence are significant sources of historical information. These are well preserved in the archives and give us a first-hand knowledge of events.

Newspapers, magazines, letters and pamphlets belonging to the period are also kept in libraries and archives. They were printed in different languages in different periods of time. Some of these newspapers are printed even today. Letters are specially important as they help us understand the prevailing situations from a personal point of view.

Printed books give us a detailed idea about the achievements in various fields such as art, literature, science and technology and medicine etc. Books also tell us about social, economic and political conditions of a period. Biographies and autobiographies give an account of the life and thoughts of famous personalities.

Films, photographs and videotapes portray lives of famous people and events. The impression left after watching such films or video clippings are of more permanent nature as we see events with our own eyes.

2. The lure of profitable trade brought the Portuguese, Dutch, French and English trading companies to the southern part of India. Intense rivalry between the British and the French for sole control of this trade resulted in three Carnatic wars from 1744 to 1763. The British ultimately came out victorious and concentrated on extending their political control over entire India.
3. India in the 18th century was largely plagued by political instability. The death of Aurangzeb and incompetence of his successors brought about a virtual disintegration of the Mughal Empire. Many provincial kingdoms, such as Awadh, Bengal and Hyderabad declared their independence. These were known as succession states. Rajputs became powerful. The Rajput ruler Sawai Raja Jai Singh built the city of Jaipur. The Marathas gained prominence under the Peshwas until they lost power to Ahmed Shah Abdali in the Third Battle of Panipat in 1761. The Sikhs established their independent state under Maharaja Ranjit Singh. Haider Ali and his son, Tipu Sultan established and consolidated the kingdom of Mysore.
4. The policy of imperialism was the practise of controlling the territory, political system and economic life of a less powerful country by a more powerful one.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

2

## The Establishment of Company Power

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** (a) (ii)      (b) (i)      (c) (iii)      (d) (ii)      (e) (iii)

**B. Fill in the blanks:**

1. Indian **spice, silks** and **textiles** had been in demand in Europe.
2. The Dutch were interested in the Spice islands of **Java** and **Sumatra**.

3. The British established their first factory at **Surat**.
4. The Battle of **Plassey** was one of the most significant events in Indian history.
5. **Governor-general** was the supreme head of the British administration.

**C. State whether the following statements are True(T) or False (F):**

- |          |          |         |
|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. True  | 2. False | 3. True |
| 4. False | 5. False |         |

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Goa and Pondicherry.
2. Three Anglo-Maratha wars were fought between 1775 and 1818.
3. The presence of two traditional rivals and a clash of trade interests between the two, led to a series of wars. These wars were known as the Carnatic wars. This Anglo-French conflict in India lasted for nearly twenty years and led to the establishment of British power in India.

4. **Results of First Carnatic War**

Both the powers agreed to return each other's prisoners and territories. The French returned Madras to the British. The war enhanced the power and prestige of the French. It added to the tensions in the relationship between both companies.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. **The Subsidiary Alliance**

The British Governor-General, Lord Wellesley, after the Battle of Buxar, introduced the 'Subsidiary Alliance System'. Under this a state was supposed to become a subsidiary of the British, keep a resident who was chief advisor to the king and maintain an army for the protection of the kingdom. The king was even supposed to pay for the maintenance of this army. Awadh and Hyderabad were forced to become subsidiary states.

2. In the settlement with the nawab of Bengal, the English got the right of diwani or the right to collect revenue in the province of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. The English now became the undisputed masters of eastern India.
3. Lord Dalhousie the Governor-General of India from 1848-



1856, introduced the 'Doctrine of Lapse' Under this policy if any Indian ruler did not have a natural male heir to the throne, his territory will pass on successfully to the British. Satara (1848), Sambalpur (1850), Udaipur (1852), Nagpur (1853) and Jhansi (1854) were some of the territories annexed under this Act. Later, the British annexed more territories bringing many Indian princes and kings on a common platform to spear-head the revolt of 1857.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

3

## The Growth of Colonial Army and Civil Administration

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Ans. 1. (ii) 2. (iii) 3. (ii) 4. (iv) 5. (i)

**B. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. True 4. False 5. False

**C. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans. 1. Neel Darpan, a novel on the miserable plight of the indigo planters, was authored by **Dinbandhu Mitra**.  
2. The **Zamin dars** became the hereditary owners of the land.  
3. The demand for indigo increased in the late 18th century Britain because of **cloth manufacturing**.  
4. Before 1765, East India Company had purchased **Indian** goods by importing **gold** and **silver** from England.

**D. Answer in one sentence :**

- Ans. 1. Lord Cornwallis introduced the Permanent Settlement.  
2. The Mahalwari System was introduced in western U.P., parts of Madhya Pradesh and Punjab, Under Company official.  
3. Indigo and Jute.  
4. The Permanent settlement, Mahalwari settlement and Ryotwari settlement.  
5. Two methods of indigo cultivation :  
(i) Nij (ii) Ryoti.

**E. Define the following :**

- Ans. 1. **Ryot** : An Indian peasant is called ryot.

2. **Mahal** : A 'mahal' is a village or a group of village.
3. **Diwan** : The Mughal Emperor Shah Alam II in 1765 appointed East India Company as the *Diwan* and gave *Diwani* rights (office of the revenue collector) of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa. As Diwan, the Company became the chief financial administrator of the territories and had rights to collect land revenue.
4. **Nij** : Nij was a method of indigo cultivation.

**F. Short Answer questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Lord Cornwallis wanted to increase the revenue of the company and thus decided to fix the land revenue to be collected. This system was called Permanent settlement of Bengal.  
The Company introduced the Permanent Settlement of Bengal in 1793. According to this settlement, the *rajās* and *talukdars* were made the zamindars. They became hereditary owners of land. They had to collect the rent from the peasants and deposit the revenue with the Company. The amount to be paid was fixed permanently, it could not be increased in the future.
2. As the disadvantages of the Permanent Settlement became apparent, two British officials, Thomas Munro and Cpt. Reed tried out other systems in different parts of country. In 1820, the Company adopted the Ryotwari Settlement in Mysore and Carnatic and later extended it to Bombay and Madras. They felt that there were no traditional zamindars in South India and settlement had to be made with the cultivators (ryot), who had cultivated the land for generations. The fields were carefully surveyed, before the revenue was fixed. The revenue demand was very high. Peasants were unable to pay the revenue and they deserted the fields.
3. The English realized that the collection of land revenue was not sufficient to pay for the increased demand of the goods and expenditure of the Company. The cultivators should be compelled to grow those crops, needed by them, particularly opium and indigo.  
The self-sufficiency of the Indian villages was completely broken under the British. Indian peasants were forced to

grow commercial crops such as tea, coffee, indigo, jute, oilseeds, sugarcane, mulberry, rubber etc. Many of these crops were raw materials for industries of Britain. These crops were grown on large estates called plantations, owned by the Europeans. The plantations were mainly in Assam, Bengal and Kerala.

The oppressive land-revenue settlements coupled with plantation agriculture made peasants and other tribal rise up in rebellion against the British.

4. The system was very oppressive and many broke out in open rebellion. The intellectuals wrote about the misery of the ryots, e.g. in *Neel Darpan*, Dinbandhu Mitra wrote about the miserable plight of the indigo ryots.

The area under cultivation increased rapidly in Bengal. Between 1788 and 1810 the demand for indigo from Bengal increased from 30 per cent to 95 per cent and it dominated the world.

Indigo was grown in India by two methods the 'Nij' and 'Ryoti'.

Under the 'Nij' method, the planter directly controlled the lands under cultivation. He either bought the land from the zamindars or rented it and produced indigo by directly employing hired labourers. Under 'Ryoti', the planters forced the ryots to sign an agreement (satta) or the village headman signed the agreement on behalf of the ryots. Those who signed the agreement, got loans at a low rate of interest, in return they had to cultivate indigo on 25 per cent of their land holdings. The planters insisted that indigo should be cultivated on the best soil, in which the peasants wanted to cultivate rice. Indigo plant has deep roots and exhausted the soil fertility very rapidly. After the indigo harvest, the land could not be sown with rice.

5. Under 'Ryoti', the planters forced the ryots to sign an agreement (satta) or the village headman signed the agreement on behalf of the ryots. Those who signed the agreement, got loans at a low rate of interest, in return they had to cultivate indigo on 25 per cent of their land holdings. The planters insisted that indigo should be cultivated on the best soil, in which the peasants wanted to cultivate rice.

Indigo plant has deep roots and exhausted the soil fertility very rapidly. After the indigo harvest, the land could not be sown with rice.

**G. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The primary motive of the British like any other imperial power was to collect revenue from land. However, that could not be achieved without a viable land revenue collection system. The British engaged themselves in evolving a theory that could legitimise the practice of economic exploitation of Indian peasantry. Therefore, the British devised several methods to ensure a steady flow of revenue from India. The British introduced the following three different types of land revenue settlements in different parts of India.

**The Permanent Settlement (1793)**

Lord Cornwallis wanted to increase the revenue of the Company and, thus, decided to fix the land revenue to be collected. This system was called Permanent settlement of Bengal.

The Company introduced the Permanent Settlement of Bengal in 1793. According to this settlement, the rajas and talukdars were made the zamindars. They became hereditary owners of land. They had to collect the rent from the peasants and deposit the revenue with the Company. The amount to be paid was fixed permanently, it could not be increased in the future.

**Effects of the Permanent Settlement**

- Under the Permanent Settlement, the zamindars became the hereditary owners of the land. They could sell or lease their land. Initially, the revenue demand was so high, that they had to borrow money from moneylenders, at a high rate of interest to pay land revenue. In case they could not return the loan, the land was taken by the moneylender.
- By first decade of the 19th century the prices in the market rose and cultivation expanded. This meant an increase in the revenue of the zamindars, but no increase in the revenue of the Company, as it was fixed permanently.
- In many cases, the moneylender had replaced the traditional zamindars. They had no interest in the land, except the

revenue that they got from the land. They leased it to the tenants and got rent payable by the peasant. It led to rural indebtedness. The moneylenders migrated to the cities. It also led to fragmentation of land holdings, because very often a part of the land was sold to pay land revenue.

### **Mahalwari Settlement**

The officials of the Company were convinced that a new system of land revenue collection has to be introduced. Because, the increase in prices of agricultural goods benefitted only the zamindars, not the Company who got a fixed sum of revenue. So, Mackenzie planned a new system of land revenue collection, which came into effect in 1822. It was called Mahalwari Settlement. A 'mahal' is a village or a group of village.

Mahalwari Settlement, a new system of land revenue collection was introduced in western UP parts of Madhya Pradesh and Punjab. Under Company official's supervision, the collectors went from village to village, land was measured, the quality of the land was assessed, records of the rights of the group was kept. The estimated revenue from each plot of land was added to calculate the revenue from the village (mahal). Village headman was made responsible for the collection of revenue and depositing it with the Company. The revenue was revised periodically.

### **Ryotwari Settlement**

As the disadvantages of the Permanent Settlement became apparent, two British officials, Thomas Munro and Captain Reed tried out other systems in different parts of country.

In 1820, the Company adopted the Ryotwari Settlement in Mysore and Carnatic and later extended it to Bombay and Madras. They felt that there were no traditional zamindars in South India and settlement had to be made with the cultivators (ryot), who had cultivated the land for generations. The fields were carefully surveyed, before the revenue was fixed. The revenue demand was very high. Peasants were unable to pay the revenue and they deserted the fields.

2. The result of the exploitative agrarian policies and land laws introduced by the British could be seen in the form of many new factors in the Indian society.

Land became a saleable property.

- The system of paying revenue within the specified time
- compelled many small peasants and landholders to mortgage or to dispose old their property.

Whenever the peasant failed to pay land revenue, the

- government put up his land for sale to collect the arrears of revenue. In such a case, he lost land and turned into a landless labourer.

The policies followed by the British only led to the impoverishment of the peasantry. Even the benefits of commercialisation did not reach the peasants. This oppressive system continued almost till the end of British rule.

4. The English realized that the collection of land revenue was not sufficient to pay for the increased demand of the goods and expenditure of the Company. The cultivators should be compelled to grow those crops, needed by them, particularly opium and indigo.

The self-sufficiency of the Indian villages was completely broken under the British. Indian peasants were forced to grow commercial crops such as tea, coffee, indigo, jute, oilseeds, sugarcane, mulberry, rubber etc. Many of these crops were raw materials for industries of Britain. These crops were grown on large estates called plantations, owned by the Europeans. The plantations were mainly in Assam, Bengal and Kerala.

The oppressive land-revenue settlements coupled with plantation agriculture made peasants and other tribal rise up in rebellion against the British.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

4

The Revolt of 1857

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (iv)                      3. (ii)                      4. (ii).

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

**Ans.**

1. During the period of **1763-1856** a large number of revolts broke out in India.
2. The Revolt of 1857 was started by **a mutiny of the soldiers.**
3. **Mangal Pandey** was the first repyo to protest against greased catridges.
4. The revolt in Delhi was led by **Bakht Khan.**
5. **Bahadur Shah** deported to Rangoon.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.**

1. False
2. False
3. True
4. False
5. False

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Some important leaders of the revolt were Bakht Khan, Nana Sahib, Tantia Tope, Azimullah, Begum Hazrat Mahal, Rani Lakshmi Bai, Khan Bahadur Khan and Kunwar Singh.
2. The conquest and annexation had left a trial of discontentment among the rulers. The strict enforcement of the policies of Subsidiary Alliance and Doctrine of Lapse made the ruling sections of soceity angry. Rani Lakshmi Bai and Nana Sahib became enemies of the British and led the revolt in their respective territories.

The Nawabs of Awadh had always been loyal to the British. But the annexation of Awadh by the British was widely seen as an act of betrayal by the British. It deeply hurt the sentiments of the Company's sepoys because most of them came from Awadh. Peasants had to pay higher revenue and additional taxes were imposed. The people who lost their jobs due to the collapse of the Nawab's administration were not provided with alternative source of employment.

3. The peasant and indigenous communities opposed the exploitative system of land revenue collection.
4. The revolt was marked the highest in Awadh. Lucknow was its capital. In Lucknow, the revolt was led by Beghum Hazrat Mahal. She proclaimed her minor son Bijris Qadar, as the Nawab of Awadh and started a struggle against the British. The zamindars, peasants and soldiers of Awadh extended their support to Begum. The rebels showing remarkable valour, besieged the British Residency on July, 1857 and soon the whole of Awadh fell into their hands—Maulvi Ahmaddullah of Faizabad, played an

important role in the revolt of Lucknow.

5. The sepoys were also angry as they were treated unfairly by their officials, who were British.
6. The newly educated Indians remained unsympathetic to the Revolt. Many of them showed compassion and goodwill towards the British and felt that they were required for India's development.

**E. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans.**

1. Many reasons were responsible for the failure.  
The revolt failed to spread over the whole India and remained limited to only Northern India and Central India. Many Indian rulers refused to help the rebels and some were openly hostile to the rebels and helped the British in suppressing the revolt. The middle and upper classes also did not support the revolt.  
Most of the leaders were no match to the dynamic and able leadership of the British. The leaders were motivated by their personal gains rather than love for their motherland. Many of them lacked foresight and determination.  
The rebels had no centralized planning or coordinated plans. They failed to capitalize on their gains.  
The Indians fought with their outdated weapons as against the sophisticated British weapons.  
The newly educated Indians remained unsympathetic to the Revolt. Many of them showed compassion and goodwill towards the British and felt that they were required for India's development.  
Thus, the Revolt of 1857 was an unprecedented event in the history of India. It united, though in a limited sense the people of India for a common cause. The Revolt failed to achieve the desired goal, but it did accentuate the rising tide of Indian nationalism.
2. The revolt spread to many regions of the country. After Meerut and Delhi, the revolt spread to Kanpur, Lucknow, Jhansi, Bareilly and Arrah. Some uprisings also occurred in parts of Bengal, Assam, Orissa, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and Maharashtra. Even in areas where no uprising occurred, unrest prevailed.  
The revolt at various places was led by different leaders. In



Delhi, Bakht Khan was the commander of the rebels. In Kanpur, Nana Sahib was declared the Peshwa. His troops were led by Tantia Tope and Azimullah. At Lucknow, Begum Hazrat Mahal. In Jhansi Rani Lakshmi Bai challenged British authority. Khan Bahadur Khan was the leader in Bareilly. Kunwar Singh organized and led the revolt at Arrah and other places in Bihar.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

5

## Colonialism and Tribal Societies

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answers :

- Ans.** 1. (iii)                      2. (i)                                      3. (ii)  
4. (i)                                5. (ii).

#### B. State whether the following statements are True or False :

- Ans.** 1. True      2. False      3. True      4. False      5. False

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.** 1. Some tribals practised **Jhum** cultivation.  
2. The **Van Gujjars** of the Punjab hills and the Labadis of Andhra Pradesh were **herder**.  
3. The British did not like tribals who **wandered** from one place to another.  
4. British arrested the Birsa in **1895** and released in **1897**.  
5. In **1900** Birsa died of cholera.

#### D. Match the following :

- Ans.** 1. Jhum Cultivation                      Andhra Pradesh  
2. Labadis                                      Chottanagpur  
3. Bukharwals                                Hilly and forested parts of north-east  
4. Mundas                                      Kashmir

#### E. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans.** 1. Baigas were the tribes of central India.

#### 2. Jhum Cultivators :

Some tribes practised Jhum cultivation, which was done on a small piece of land. They cut trees and burnt vegetation. So

that they could use the land there. They spread the ash from the fire which contained Potash, to make the soil fertile. Trees were cut with axe and hoe to scratch the soil, to make it bit for cultivation. Seeds were scattered on the field. Once harvesting of crops was done farmers shifted to another field. The cultivated field was left for some years so that it could regain its fertility. This was called Jhum or Shifting cultivation and was practised in the hilly and forested parts of north-east and central India. People of this tribe remained confined to forests only.

3. The British did not like tribals who wandered from one place to another. They wanted to see them as settle cultivators. Settled peasants could be controlled easily. It even gave a regular source of revenue to the state. The British therefore, introduced land settlement. It was to be done by measuring land, and fixing demand for the state. Some peasants were declared owners of the land while the others were tenants. Tenants had to pay rent to the owners who in turned paid revenue to the state. The British effort to settle Jhum cultivation paid dividends. Scarcity of water, however, did give them some problems.
4. Santhals' revolt was directed against all outsiders including the British officials, police as well as zamindars and moneylenders. The term used for them was dikus meaning outsiders.
5. The Santhals inhabited some parts of Chota Nagpur plateau, Bengal and Bihar. They mainly led a life of hunter-gatherer. However, as the British captured their land, they retreated into the interiors of forests, farther away from the towns and cities. When the British, along with the local landlords, sought to usurp even these lands, the Santhals revolted.

**F. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans.**

1. Do yourself
2. Birsa Munda was a rebel against British of eighteenth century. Born in mid-1870s he was from a poor family. In childhood he grazed sheep, played flute and danced in the local akhara. As an adolescent, Birsa heard of the Munda rebellion. Tales of a golden age, when the Munda would be free of

oppression of dikus and get back their ancestral rights, impressed him.

Birsa went to local missionary school and heard that Mundas could attain independence and their lost right. However, this was possible only, if they became good Christians and give up their 'evil practices'. Later, Birsa came under the influence of Vaishnav preachers and started wearing sacred thread and valuing the importance of purity and piety. Deeply touched by many of the ideas, he learnt in his childhood, he urged the Mundas to give up liquor, clean the village and stop believing in witchcraft. Birsa believed that missionaries and Hindu landlords were ruining the Munda way of living.

In 1895, Birsa urged all his followers, to regain their glorious past all over again. He announced the coming of Satyug (the age of truth), when Mundas could have a good life, make embankments, tap natural springs, plant trees and orchards and practice cultivation to earn their living.

British opposed the political aims of the Birsa movement, as he wanted to drive out the British government missionaries, moneylenders. Hindu landlords. He aimed to establish a Munda Raj with Birsa as its head. The land policies and pursued by British proved disastrous. Birsa led the movement and was jailed for 2 years for rioting by the British.

After release, Birsa began touring the village to gather support. He made use of symbols and language to arouse people. He called upon them to overthrow 'Ravana' (dikus and the European and establish a kingdom under his leadership Birsa's followers targeted symbol of dikus and the Europeans. They assaulted the police stations and Churches and raided the property of moneylenders and zamindars. While flag was raised as symbol of Birsa Raj.

In 1900, Birsa died of cholera and the movement became weak. But, the movement had its own features. First, it forced the British to established a law that the land of the tribals could not be easily taken over by the dikus. Secondly, it showed the strength and capacity of tribals, to rebel against injustice of British. They did this with their will

power and by discovering their own rituals and symbols of struggle. They fought till they won. The sacrifice of Birsa, their leader, did not go in vain.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

6

## Crafts and Industries

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answers :

**Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (i)

#### B. State whether the following statements are True or False :

**Ans.** 1. False 2. True 3. True 4. True.

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.**
1. The British rule broke down the whole set up of Indian **society** and **economy**.
  2. **De -industrialisation** is a reverse process of industrialization.
  3. The British government in India has obliged to use only **British-made** paper.
  4. **J.N. Tata** set up Tata Iron and Steel Company in 1911.
  5. Cotton is an integral part of **textiles** in India.

#### D. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans.**
1. **De-industrialisation** : De-industrialisation is a reverse process of industrialization by which the manufacturing-based economy of a country or a region decline.
  2. **Causes** : Some of the factors that led to the downfall of the Indian handicrafts are as follows :  
Exporting raw material from India in large quantities.  
Imposition of heavy duties on Indian craftsmen.
  3. **Cotton Textile industry** was first established in Mumbai where the first cotton mill was established by Cowarjee Nambooy in 1853. Later, many more mills were set up in Ahmedabad, Bombay and Madras. Most of the cotton mills were owned by the Indians.
  4. **Coal Mining** : Coal-mining also started in a big way during this period and the coal-mines of Bengal, Bihar and Orissa

supplied a coal for use in railways and smelting iron-ore, to make steel. The Bengal Coal Company was established in 1843. Coal mining remained confined to Bengal and Bihar. There were more than hundred coal mines by the end of 19th century, employing lakhs of workers.

**E. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans. 1. Decline of Indian Handicraft**

The decline of Indian handicrafts did not occur all of a sudden. Rather it came to be systematically ruined by the British. After the Battle of Plassey, East India Company began to monopolise the artisans and started dictating its own terms to the craftsmen. The commercial policies of the British were largely influenced by imperialistic regime in India. During the second half of the 18th century and early 19th century Britain underwent profound social and economic transformation due to the Industrial Revolution and the British Industry developed and expanded rapidly on the basis of modern machine, factory system and Capitalism. Britain also captured and monopolized many foreign markets by mean of colonialism. It now had a strong industrial class, in whose interest manufactured goods were exported to vast markets, provided in the form of colonies.

Thus, the government of Britain, in the 19th century followed a policy of FREE TRADE or unrestricted entry of British goods into India. The Indian handicrafts were exposed to the fierce and unequal competition of machine made products of Britian and as such, faced extinction. India had to admit British goods for free or at minimum tariff rates. The Indian handmade goods were unable to compete with the much cheaper machine-made foreign products.

The Indian products, which could still compete with British products, were subjected to heavy duties when exported. The duties on some of these exports were as high as 400 per cent. This led to the decline of the Indian export market. The desire for raw material to keep the British Industrial Revolution going on, led to these drastic measures.

In short, the British commercial policy was guided by the needs of the British industry with the main aim of transforming India into a consumer of British goods and a

supplier of raw material.

2. Do yourself

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

7

## Urban Changes under Colonialism

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Ans. 1. (iii) 2. (iv)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans. 1. The **Delhi Sultans** and **Mughals** revived the urbanisation in the country again.
2. Kolkata gained more prominence than **other presidency** as headquarters of the East India Company.
3. The British established **Fort William** to fortify their possession in Kolkata.
4. In the age of Mahabharata, the region of Delhi was referred as **Indraprastha**.
5. **Lord Dalhousie** introduced postage stamps.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

Ans. 1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False.

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans. 1. During British rule there was some improvement in civic facilities in some major Indian cities. Piped water supply, street lights, domestic water supply, sewerage, parks and playgrounds were set up in civil lines. Urban administrative bodies were set up from 1881 to look after civic problems. They were primarily looking after collection of local taxes, maintenance of roads, removal of garbage, primary education and public health.
2. India had witnessed a process of de-urbanisation especially in the northern part of the country between 6th century AD and 13th century AD. This was brought about by the political instability and consequent economic decline. The Delhi Sultans and the Mughals revived the urbanization in the country again. Some towns emerged as trading centres, some as manufacturing centres while some were established

by the patronage of rulers. The capital cities of the rulers became important administrative and economic centers.

3. **De-Urbanisation**

After 1857, the British Crown assumed direct control of the Indian subcontinent declaring Queen Victoria to be the Empress of India resulting in the beginning of the British Raj. Tariffs on Indian merchants were raised substantially while more and more tracts of Indian farmland were seized and administered by British officials for production of goods. These goods including essential food, were then exported to Britain.

4. The Indian Police Act of 1861 marked the final change from the Mughal System to the British Raj. The main objective of the police reforms under the Indian Police Act was to set up a uniform and effective police administration in India. The police force was arranged under local government as one battalion and police administration extended to all districts. The post of Inspector General of Police was created for the first time.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Urbanisation During Medieval Period**

India had witnessed a process of de-urbanisation especially in the northern part of the country between 6th century AD and 13th century AD. This was brought about by the political instability and consequent economic decline. The Delhi Sultans and the Mughals revived the urbanization in the country again. Some towns emerged as trading centres, some as manufacturing centres while some were established by the patronage of rulers. The capital cities of the rulers became important administrative and economic centers. Some of the important cities established by the Delhi Sultans and the Mughal emperor were Ferozabad, Fatehpur-Sikri and Hissar etc. With Mughal Empire, politics underwent a major change from late 17th century onwards. In the 18th century, on the debris of the Mughal Empire arose a large number of independent and semi-independent states, such as Bengal, Awadh, Hyderabad, Mysore and the kingdom of the Marathas. Invasions of Nadir Shah Ahmed Shah Abdali and some local chieftains devastated

flourishing cities such as Delhi and Lahore. On the other hand, capitals of succession states such as Murshidabad, the capital of Bengal, and Lucknow, capital of Awadh emerged as important towns.

## 2. Calcutta

The British established Fort William to fortify their possessions in Kolkata. After the British won the Battle of Plassey, Kolkata became the headquarters of 1773, Governor of Kolkata was made the Governor-General of India and the

Governors of Madras and Bombay were made subservient to him.

Calcutta remained the British capital till 1911. Calcutta is known as Kolkata these days.

### Madras

The British had originally settled at Masaulipatnam near Madras. They were allowed entry into Madras by the local Raja and they constructed Fort St. George, to guard their settlements from French and Dutch threat. In 1658, Madras became a Presidency and Dutch threat. In 1658, Madras became a Presidency and all factories of the Coromandel coast were subordinated to it. Madras is known as Chennai these days.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answers :

Ans. 1. (iii) 2. (ii)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans.
1. Higher education was imparted in **Arabic** and **Persian**.
  2. The Calcutta Madrasa was established in **1781** by **wassen Hastings**.
  3. **Wood's dispatch of 1854** was the most important step in the development of education.



4. Rabindranath Tagore established the **Visvabharati University** at **Shantiniketan**.
5. The **Swadeshi Movement** called upon Indians to boycott schools and colleges.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. False    2. True    3. False    4. True    5. True.

**D. Define :**

- Ans.**
1. **Madrassa :** Till the 19th century, education in India was based on religious studies and was disseminated through *madarassas* and *pathshalas*.
  2. **Dispatch :** In 1854 the British Government declared its intention of creating properly articulated system of education from primary school to the university. This declaration known as the Wood's dispatch of 1854.
  3. **Boycott :** Boycott means not accepting any system, rule or law.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. The British introduced the New Education system or modern education in India to fulfil their many objectives. The chief among them are the following :
    - (i) **To Encourage the Study of English language :** They wanted that the people under their rule should learn their language which they must use in communicating with them. Besides they thought that as a result of the learning of English the Indian people would easily accept the British rule.
    - (ii) **To Reduce the Expenditure on Administration :** The British introduced modern education in India with the sole object of reducing the expenditure incurred on administration. In different departments, they needed a large number of such employees who could not be brought from England. This demand could be met only by employing the educated Indians who could prove far less expensive than the Europeans.
    - (iii) **To Expand Market for English Goods :** The British Government's only motive behind spreading modern education was to create a class of brown-skinned educated Indians who would be English in their thoughts and tastes. Hence, the English educated Indians would help expand the

market for British manufactures.

- (iv) **Spread of Christianity** : The Christian missionaries imported the modern education with a view that Indian would be attracted towards Christianity.
2. **Charles Wood's Dispatch 1854** : In 1854 the British Government declared its intention of creating properly articulated system of education from the primary school to the university. This declaration known as the Wood's dispatch of 1854, was the most important step in the development of education in India. It set forth a comprehensive scheme of promoting education in India. It was recommended therein that :
- An Education Department was to be established in every province.
  - Universities on the model of the London University be established in big cities such as Bombay, Calcutta and Madras.
  - At least one government school should be opened in every district.
  - Affiliated Private Schools should be given grant-in-aid.
3. **Indian Initiative** : When the inadequacies of the education system came to the fore, enlightened Indian rulers and intellectuals like Raja Rammohan Roy, Rabindranath Tagore, etc. themselves played a leading role in the spread of education. During the early years of the 20th century, leaders of the freedom movement formed a National Council of Education, as a revolt against British control over education. They set up National Schools and National Colleges. Later they established Vidyapeeths at Banaras and Ahmedabad and the Jamia Milia Islamia institute at Aligarh, which was later shifted to Delhi. They also tried to give shape to a new enlightened vision of education.
4. **Charter Act of 1813** : England officials feeling were that time that Company should do practically little for the intellectual and moral development of the Indian people. It was therefore, laid in the Charter Act of AD 1813 that the Company would set aside a sum of rupees on lakh for promoting the knowledge of modern sciences in India. But even this meager amount was not utilized for several years

as no decision could be reached as to what the medium of education should be.

5. **Growth of National Education :** The Swadeshi Movement called upon Indian to boycott schools and colleges administered by the British. In November, 1905, a conference was held in Bengal to create an education system managed by the Indians. Thus, the National Council of Education was set up from the funds given by rich Indians. Soon, many national schools and colleges were set up both at primary and secondary level. In its Calcutta session in 1906, the Indian National Congress also encouraged the opening of indigenous educational institution throughout the country.

The British did pave the way for modern education in India to suit their own requirements. Education helped in spreading awareness and enlightenment, and soon became a dominant reason for the emergence of Indian National Movement.

**F. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans. (i) Drawbacks of Modern Education System**

Introduction of modern education was a mixed blessings. Some of its drawback were as follow :

- (ii) **Neglect of the Common People :** By educating the members of the higher and the middle classes only the company created a serious gap between various classes of the Indian people. The only object of their educational system was to prepare clerks who would carry on the work of the Company's administration smoothly. It simply shows the selfishness of the Company.
- (iii) **Lack of Funds :** Even the meager amount of one lakh set aside for educational purposes could not be spent till AD 1833. There were hardly any primary schools and whatever few existed suffered because of the lack of funds.
- (iv) **The Medium of Instruction :** Since the English was the medium of instruction, common people remained aloof from it. All the subjects were taught through English as such the study of Indian languages was neglected. All those who got their training in English considered themselves superior to others.

- (iv) **Neglect of Scientific and Technical Education :** The English government never paid any attention toward imparting scientific and technical education. But AD 1857 only three Medical Colleges, one each at Calcutta, Bombay and Madras, and one Engineering College at Roorkee were opened. Admission to these college was open only for the Europeans. As such the Indians were almost totally neglected.
- (v) **Neglect of the Women's Education :** The education of girls was neglected. No funds were set aside for the education of women, as women's education had no utility for the English. On the other hand, in doing so they were afraid of hurting the sentiments of the Indian people as the conservative Indian opinion was against giving any education to their women folk.
2. **Indian Initiative :** When the inadequacies of the education system came to the fore, enlightened Indian rulers and intellectuals like Raja Rammohan Roy, Rabindranath Tagore, etc. themselves played a leading role in the spread of education. During the early years of the 20th century, leaders of the freedom movement formed a National Council of Education, as a revolt against British control over education. They set up National Schools and National Colleges. Later they established Vidyapeeths at Banaras and Ahmedabad and the Jamia Milia Islamia institute at Aligarh, which was later shifted to Delhi. They also tried to give shape to a new enlightened vision of education.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

9

Changes in the Arts : Literature,  
Painting and Architecture

### Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions :**

**Ans.** 1. (i)                      2. (iii)                      3. (ii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. \_\_\_\_\_ deciphered the Brahmi Script.  
2. Indian poetry represented \_\_\_\_\_ in thought and

language.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ was a renowned photographer.
4. The Rajabai Tower was built by \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ is one of the largest judicial complexes in the world.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

**Ans.** 1. True      2. False      3. False      4. False      5. True

**D. Short Answer questions :**

- Ans.**
1. William Jones.
  2. A new form of drama emerged combining the western and eastern styles. Some notable dramatists of the period were Badal Sarkar (Bengali). Vijay Tendulkar (Marathi) and Girish Karnad (Kannada). Shambu Mitra, Shriram Lagoo. Habib Tanveer and Satyadev Dubey.
  3. Rabindranath Tagore, Mohammed Iqbal, Subramanya Bharti, Keshavaut and Qazi Nazrul Islam.
  4. **Newspapers Journalists**
    1. Kesari and Mahratta BG Tilak
    2. Hindu G Subramaniya Iyer
    3. Indian Mirror NN Sen
    4. Amrit Bazaar Patrika SK Ghosh and Motilal Ghosh
    5. Young India Mahatma Gandhi
    6. Voice of India Dadabhai Naoroji
  5. Architecture in Bombay under the British underwent change. Colonel Thomas Couper designed the Town Hall. The building is 200 feet long and 100 feet wide. The building was completed in 1833.  
Next, the university of Bombay was established in 1857. It was one of the first educational institutions to be established following the wood's dispatch on Education in 1854.  
The Foundation stone of the Rajabai. Tower was laid in 1869 and was completed in November 1878. This tower was built by Sir George Gilbert Scott, an English architect.  
The Victoria Terminus (now called Chattrapati Shivaji Terminus) was built in 1888 and was named after the Queen of England, Queen Victoria, Designed by a famous British architect, it was recognised as a UNESCO World Heritage Site in 2004.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans. 1. Interest of European Scholars in Indian Learning Literature**

- (i) He founded the Asiatic Society of Bengal in 1784 which aimed at looking into “the history and antiquities, arts, sciences and literature of Asia.” This society published a journal called. Journal of the Asiatic society of Bengal. William stones translated, Kalidas 'Abhijnasakuntalam into English.'
- (ii) Max Mueller, a German scholar, was attracted to the study of ancient art, history and philosophy of India. He edited and translated the Rig Veda into English.
- (iii) James Princep, an official of the East India Company, deciphered the Brahmi script in which edicts of Ashoka were written. As a result a great deal of information could be gathered about Ashoka and the splendour of the Mauryan empire.

The pride in India's past achievements led to a kind of awakening and a cultural renaissance, which saw great developments in the realms of literature, painting and architecture. People were curious to know more about literature language and art of the previous age.

2. Many developments took place in Indian language with the influence of modern ideas.

Literature became more realistic. Literary works began portraying day-to-day problems and struggles of individuals. The drama Neel Darpan by Dinabandhu Mitra spoke about the miserable plight of the indigo cultivators.

New forms of literary writing, such as novel, short story, drama and essays began to develop. Prose became the dominant style of writing.

A plethora of literary works was produced in regional Indian languages.

Nationalism and freedom movement became subjects of literary works, replacing mythology and religion. This helped in the spread of the spirit of nationalism.

The introduction of the printing press contributed greatly to the production and spread of literature.

Some of the prominent works of fiction of 19th and 20th

centuries were :

### **Novelist Work**

Bankim Chandra Chatterjee Anand Math (contains India's national song Vande Mataram)

Rabindranath Tagore Gora, Ghare Baire,

Munshi Premchand Godaan, Rangbhoomi

Bibhuti Bhushan Bandopadhyay Pather Panchali

Yashpal Jhootha Sach

Phanishwar Nath Renu Maila Anchal

Sarat Chandra Chattopadhyay Srikanta, Devdas

Tara Shankar Chattopadhyay Ganadevta

Gopinath Praja (Oriya)

Panna Lal Patel Makelajeet (Gujarati)

Manik Bandopadhyay Padmanadir Majhi

### **Short Stories :**

Short story as a separate genre witnessed great advancements. Rabindranath Tagore, Munshi Premchand, Saadat Hasan Manto, Rajendra Singh Bedi and Krishan Chandra are known for their contribution to the growth of short stories.

### **Poetry :**

European literature had a profound impact on the Indian literary scene. This led to the birth of romantic poetry in India. But the romanticism of Indian poetry had more learnings towards nationalism and the themes were related to anti-imperialism. Some notable poets of this period are : Rabindranath Tagore (Bengali), Mohammad Iqbal (Urdu), Subramanya Bharti (Tamil), Keshavsut (Marathi), Munshi Premchand (Hindi), Qazi Nazrul Islam (Bengali).

In the middle of 20th century, Indian poetry represented realism in thought and language. The miseries and sufferings of the common man became the themes of poetry.

### **Development of the Press :**

Some of the earliest newspapers in India were started by the British and mainly for the British. During the course of the nineteenth century and later, however, a powerful Indian press grew, both in English and the Indian languages most of the reformers had either themselves started on were connected with newspapers and journals. Indians became





3. **Hartals** : Hartals means strikes for persuading any thing.
4. **Swaraj** : In 1906, the Indian National Congress held its annual session at Calcutta. Dadabhai Naoroji was the president of this session. He tried to make the Moderates and the Extremists agree to certain common policies. The Congress declared 'Swaraj' or Self-Government as its goal. It declared that India must be governed by the elected representatives of the people.

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. From the beginning the British were against the Congress policy of demanding reforms. Therefore, not many reforms were introduced during the first two decades of the existence of the Congress. The Indian Councils Act of 1892 was a disappointment. The freedom of the press was curtailed. Indians continued to be denied basic political rights. The British officials called the nationalist leaders as 'disloyal babus' and began to criticize the congress and its leaders. They also tried to create a gulf between the Hindus and the Muslims by their policy of 'Divide and Rule'. But the opposition of the authorities failed to check the growth of the National Movement.
  2. **The Swadeshi and Boycott Movement** : The division of Bengal gave rise to two new methods of struggle—the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement which was launched to end the partition. Swadeshi literally means 'of one's own country'. It was aimed at promotion indigenous industries by boycotting use of British goods so that Indian industries would prosper and a patriotic spirit be developed. The method of boycott focused on asking people to boycott British goods, so that India was no longer treated as a dumping ground and a market for British goods. Starting from Bengal, the Swadeshi and Boycott Movement spread like wild fire across the country. Everyone—the rich and poor, the young and old, men and women joined in the crusade to boycott British goods and use Indian-made goods. Shopkeepers were persuaded to stop selling British goods and instead stock Indian goods. People wearing British-made cloth were criticized openly. At some places, barbers and washerman refused to serve people using

British goods.

Students played a very important role in these movements. They boycotted classes and demonstrated on the streets. They dissuaded people from buying British goods. A large number of women also joined the demonstrations. Many of them faced police brutalities and even went to prison. From this time on women began to play an active role in the national movement. The British were finally forced to announce the partition in 1911.

3. In 1906, a delegation of the Muslim leaders led by Agha Khan, the religious head of a Muslim sect and Nawab Salmulia of Dhaka met Viceroy Lord Minto with request that a separate organization for the Muslims should be formed with their aim of dividing the Indian people along religious lines. So, the All-India Muslim League was formed. Its objectives were to be loyal to the government, to protect the interests of the Muslims and to promote goodwill with people of all communities.

4. **The Jallianwala Bagh Massacre (1919)**

Hartals and protest meetings were held all over the country opposing the Rowlatt Act. On 6 April 1919, Gandhiji was arrested. This was followed by arrests for Dr. Satya Pal and Dr. Saifuddin Kitchlew in Punjab.

On 13 April 1919, a peaceful public meeting was held at Jallianwala Bagh in Amritsar to protest against the arrests of Dr. Satya Pal and Kitchlew. The peaceful gathering was attended by men, women and children. General Dyer, a British officer, stationed a regiment of soldiers at the only entrance of the park, declared the meeting illegal and ordered his soldiers to open fire at the people. The firing lasted for ten minutes, till all the ammunition was exhausted. Close to four hundred people were killed and thousands were wounded.

The massacre inflamed the anger of the Indians. After the massacre, General Dyer said that he had ordered his troops to fire to teach the Indians a lesson. This added fuel to the fire. There were widespread protests. Rabindranath Tagore surrendered his knighthood in protest. All national leaders condemned this cowardly act. The government declared

martial law in Punjab and resorted to inhuman cruelties to stop the rising tide of protests. People were tortured and newspapers were banned. However, all this repression further strengthened people's determination to fight against oppression.

**5. Split in the INC, Surat Session (1907)**

The Moderates and the Extremists could not remain united for long. At the Congress session in 1907 at Surat, a conflict arose. This conflict was over the methods to be adopted for the attainment of 'Swaraj'. The Congress began to be controlled by the Moderates and the Extremists functioned from outside. It was only in 1916, at the Lucknow session of the Congress, that the two groups were again united.

Even after the withdrawal of the Extremists from the Congress, their policies remained popular throughout the country. The British panicked at the growing popularity of the Extremists and tried to suppress their movement. Lala Lajpat Rai was arrested in 1907 and deported to Burma. Bipin Chandra Pal was also imprisoned. Bal Gangadhar Tilak was arrested in 1908 and deported to Burma for six years. Public meetings and many newspapers were banned. But these acts failed to lessen the popularity of the Extremists among the masses.

6. Bengal at that time was a very big province consisting of present West Bengal and East Bengal (Bangladesh). In 1905, Lord Curzon, the Viceroy of India, partitioned Bengal into West Bengal and East Bengal. East Bengal, in which the majority of the population was Muslim, was separated from the rest of Bengal. The reason given for the partition was that since Bengal was too big, it was important to divide it so as to administer it better.

Actually, reasons for the partition were, however, different. The national movement in Bengal was very strong. The partition was a deliberate attempt to weaken the movement.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. Many political associations were formed in various parts of the country before the formation of Indian National Congress in 1885. These were the Indian Association founded by Surendranath Banerjee in 1851, The Bombay

Association 1852, Madras Native Association (1852) founded by G. Subramaniya Iyer and Ananda Charlu, Poona Sarvajanik Sabha (1870) founded by Justice Ranade and the Bombay Presidency Association (1885) established by Pherozshah Mehta and Badruddin Tyabji.

However, these associations had a localized and limited participation. Soon, the need was felt for an all-India political organization. The credit for giving a concrete and final shape to this political organization (named Indian National Congress) goes to a retired English Civil Servant A.O. Hume.

2. The national leaders like Dadabhai Naoroji, P. N. Mehta, D.E. Wacha, W.C. Banerjee, S.N. Banerjee, Gopal Krishna Gokhale, who dominated Congress policies during this time, believed in liberalism and moderate politics and came to be known as Moderates. They all believed in constitutional methods and favoured the policy of protest, prayer and petition.

The chief aims of the Indian National Congress (INC) were :

1. To promote and consolidate the feeling of national unity.
2. To present popular demands before the government.
3. To bring together leaders from different parts of the country.
4. To remove racial, religious and caste prejudices.
5. To create public opinion in the country.

### **RISE OF EXTREMISM**

Soon the Extremists became important in the Congress. The Extremists were led by Lala Lajpat Rai, Bal Gangadhar Tilak and Bipin Chandra Pal (popularly known as Lal-Bal-Pal). Another extremist leader was Aurobindo Ghosh. These leaders opposed British rule very strongly. They called for strikes, boycotts and mass demonstrations to spread political awakening and achieve political reforms. Many reasons contributed to the rise of extremism within the Congress. The main among these were—disappointment with the British attitude towards the Congress and Lord Curzon's decision to partition Bengal.

3. Do yourself

4. Though the British intensified their policy of suppressing the Extremists, they at the same time, also tried to appease the Moderates by announcing certain political concessions. In 1909, an act was passed based on the suggestions of the Viceroy Lord Minto and the Secretary of State for India, Morley. This act is known as Morley-Minto Reforms or the Government of India Act of 1909. The Act had the following features :
- An Indian member, SP Sinha, was accepted into the Viceroy's Executive Council.
  - The membership of the Central Legislative Council and the Provincial Legislative Councils was increased. However, less than half of the members were elected members.
  - The elected members were not to be elected by the people but by the powerful sections of society such as landlords, zamindars and businessmen.
  - The Act introduced the system of separate electorats for Hindu and Muslim voters. They were to elect leaders from their own communities. This was introduced to create a communal divide.
  - The powers of the members of the Provincial Councils remained advisory.

No significant improvement was introduced by these reforms. The British refused the Indian demand for 'Swaraj'. The Congress opposed the creation of separate electorates for the Muslims. This system of separate electorates for the Muslims sowed the seeds of communalism.

5. **Khilafat Movement (1920)**

The growing discontent against the British led to the launching of the Khilafat Movement which was organized by the Ali brothers—Mohammad Ali and Shaukat Ali—in protest against the injustices done to Turkey (which had fought against Britain) after the First World War. Turkey was important to the Indian Muslims as the Sultan of Turkey was also the 'Caliph' (or Khalifa) and was the head of the Muslims throughout the world. The Khilafat leaders put pressure on the British government to give better treatment to Turkey. Through this demand, Muslims were drawn into

the national movement in large numbers. This movement became a part of the national movement. The Congress leaders joined the agitation and popularized it.

### **Non-cooperation Movement (1920-1922)**

Angered by the rigid attitude of the British, the Congress decided to start a Non-Cooperation Movement under the leadership of Gandhiji. Gandhiji urged Indians not to cooperate with the British. The movement aimed at protesting against British repression in Punjab and their policy towards Turkey. It was also for the attainment of 'Swaraj'.

The movement was to be launched in stages. It started with the giving up of honorary titles received by the Indian from the British government. Gandhiji gave up the title of 'Kaiser-i-Hind' medal. This was followed by boycott of schools, colleges, law courts and elections to the legislatures. Educational institutions like the 'Jamia Milia Islamia' at Aligarh (later shifted to Delhi) and 'Kashi Vidyapeeth' at Benaras were started by nationalist leaders. Foreign clothes were burned and strikes and hartals were organized. Indians were asked not to pay taxes, not to work for the British and not to cooperate with the government.

Along with boycott and non-cooperation, a constructive programme was also launched. It included the popularization of the charkha and khadi, promotion of Hindu-Muslim unity, abolition of untouchability and the spread of education. Emphasis on these popular issues made the movement a mass movement.

The movement was a great success. Thousands of people willingly went to jail.

But the Non-cooperation Movement came to an abrupt end because of a violent incident at Chauri Chaura, in a police station 15 miles away from Gorakhpur in UP in 1922. There the police opened fire on a mob of peasants, exhausted its ammunition and when the infuriated mob attacked the policemen, they found shelter in the thana (police-post). The mob burnt the thana which resulted in the death of twenty-two policemen inside the building. The news of the Chauri Chaura incident disturbed Gandhi and he suspended the



monopoly over its production revealed the most oppressive policy of British government. Lord Irwin did not accept the demand of Gandhiji.

On 12 March 1930, Gandhiji started his march from Sabarmati Ashram in Ahmedabad, accompanied by 78 of his volunteers. The March was over 240 miles from the Sabarmati Ashram to Dandi, a coastal village of Gujarat on the Arabian sea coast.

Whenever he stopped, thousands of people joined Gandhiji on the way to break salt law, called Dandi March, also known as Salt Satyagraha. On 6 April 1930, Gandhiji broke the salt law by picking up a lump of natural salt.

3. The Simon Commission was a group of seven British Members of Parliament, led by Sir John Simon, who came to India in 1927 to study the working of the Government of India Act 1919. Indians were, however, not pacified as the Commission did not include a single Indian member.

All political groups including Indian National Congress decided to boycott the Commission. When the Commission arrived on 3 February 1928, it was met with demonstrations and slogans repression to crush the anti-Simon agitation.

In Lahore, Lala Lajpat Rai led a peaceful demonstration against the Simon Commission. Saunders, a British police officer ordered the lathi-charge. Lalaji was beaten in this lathi charge. As a result, he died a few days later.

The Commission published its 17-Volume report in 1930. It proposed the abolition of diarchy and the establishment of representative government in the provinces.

4. **Quit India Movement**

In August 1942, Gandhiji and the Congress launched the famous Quit India Movement. On 8th August, 1942 the All India Congress Committee met at Bombay. They asked English to leave India. On 9th August 1942, Gandhiji was arrested along with the other senior leaders and Congress was declared as an illegal organisation. The people became violent being leaderless. The people destroyed police stations, post offices, railway stations and other government buildings. The British tried to crush the rebels but the people retaliated with the same force.



**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. Do yourself
2. Do yourself
3. The British government passed the Indian Act, 1935 and gave provincial autonomy. The government announced the elections will be held in 1937. The Congress formed government in 7 out of 11 provinces.

In September 1939, the Second World War broke out. The Congress was ready to support the British war efforts, but in return they wanted that India should be granted freedom after the war. The British refused to accept the demand. The Congress ministries resigned from office.

4. The Muslim League, formed in 1906, was the most prominent communal party. In 1915, the Hindus formed the Hindu Mahasabha. While the mass movements called by Gandhiji saw the participation of both Hindus and Muslims, communal clashes occurred once the mass movements were withdrawn. Communal riots took place in 1920s and in 1931 at Kanpur. These weakened the national movement, as demands of communal parties were limited to the welfare of their own communities. The Sikhs also demanded separate electorate, which was granted to them in 1931.

In 1939, when the Congress leaders resigned from the provincial legislatures, the Muslim League celebrated the day as 'day of deliverance' from Hindu domination. In 1940, at the Lahore session of the Muslim League, Pakistan resolution was passed which adopted Muhammad Ali Jinnah's two-nations theory. The Congress rejected the resolution. Jinnah demanded separate states for the Muslims called Pakistan as he believed that Hindus and Muslims belonged to two separate nations. Aiming to weaken the national movement, the British supported this demand.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

## Exercise

**1. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answer :

- Ans.** 1. (i) 2. (iii)

**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.** 1. The constitution is adopted to establish **peace** to maintain law and order.  
 2. In a democracy people can **elect** their leaders on their behalf.  
 3. The **constitution** guarantees the fundamental rights to all the citizens of India.  
 4. The constitution divides the state into three organs **union, state and Panchayati Raj.**

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

- Ans.** 1. False 2. False (c) False

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.** 1. In a democracy, people choose their leaders so that they can exercise power responsibility on their behalf. However, it is possible that the leaders in power might misuse their authority. Therefore constitution provides safeguards against it. In democratic societies, the constitution often lays down the rules that guard against the misuse of power by our political leaders. Another function of constitution in a democracy is to ensure that a dominant groups does not use its power against other less powerful people or groups.  
 2. The preamble is an introduction to the constitution, which contains the fundamental values, philosophy, aims, and objectives on which our constitution is based.  
 3. Secularism means that the states does not declare any religion on the state religion. It neither favours nor discriminates on the basis of a particular religion.

**E. Long Answer Question :**

- Ans.** 1. The key features of the Indian constitution are federalism, parliamentary form of government separation of power, fundamental rights and secularism. These key features of

the Indian constitution kept in mind the diversity, unity, socio-economic reforms and representation.

(i) **Federalism**

The word federal means the existence of more than one level of government. In India, we have the Union Government at the Centre and State Governments in the States. Panchayati Raj is the third level of the government exercise their powers and functions, according to the provisions of the Constitution.

The Constitution contains three lists which enumerate the subjects on which laws can be made by the Union and State Governments.

(ii) **Parliamentary form of Government**

The different tiers of the government, consist of the representatives of the people. The Constitution of India guarantees universal adult franchise for all citizens which means people have a direct role in electing their representatives to the legislature. All people have been given the freedom to contest elections.

In a parliamentary form of government, a distinction is made between the head of the State and the head of the Government. The President is the head of the States, the Prime Minister is the head of the Government. Though the Government is carried out in the name of the President at the Centre and the Governors in the States, actual administration is carried out by the Prime Minister and Council of Ministers at the Centre and the Chief Ministers in the States. They are accountable and responsible to the Parliament and State Legislature. The Legislature consists of the representatives of the people. This makes the Parliament supreme.

**Separation of Powers**

The constitution divides the state into three organs—the Legislature, the Executive and the Judiciary. The legislature of the India is called the parliament which consists of the President and the two houses, i.e., Rajya Sabha and Lok Sabha. The executive is that organ of the government which implements the laws made by the legislature and run the government. The judiciary is the organ of government

which settle disputes related to constitutional matters. The constitution made the three organs with different powers so that they can keep check on each other and can prevent the misuse of power by any branch of the state.

**Fundamental Rights :** India had witnessed a long spell of colonial rule. Inspired by the idea of liberty, equality and fraternity, our constitution makers included a separate chapter on fundamental rights in part III of the Indian constitution. The constitution, thus guarantees these fundamental rights to the individual against the state as well as against other individual. The constitution also guarantees the rights of minorities against the majority. The constitution has a section called Directive Principles with the fundamental rights which ensure greater social and economic reform and also serve as a guide to the Indian State.

### **Secularism**

India is a land where people belong to different faiths and religions. In India, politics and religion are separate. People enjoy freedom to follow, practise and profess their own religion.

### **Welfare State**

A welfare state is a state which performs functions for the benefit of the people, like education, public health, agriculture, parks, libraries. As a welfare state, India is committed to the welfare and development of the people, particularly the vulnerable section SC/ST.

### **A Detailed Written Constitution**

The Constitution of India is the most detailed document. It is one of the best in the world, and is a living document, i.e. something has real meaning in everybody's life.

2. The Fundamental Rights in Indian Constitution :

- (i) **Right to Equality (Articles 14-18) :** It guarantees equality to every person before law and the equal protection of law within the territory of India. It also prohibits the state to discriminate against any citizen on the grounds of religion, race, caste, and place of birth or any of them. The constitution provides equality of opportunity to all the citizens in matters of public employment. It also declares

that untouchability is abolished and its practice is forbidden. The constitution prohibits the state from conferring any titles except those of military and academic distinction.

- (ii) **Right to Freedom (Articles 19-22)** : This includes the right to freedom of speech and expression, freedom to assemble peacefully, to form association, to travel to any part of the country, freedom to practice any profession. It also protects persons accused or punished of an offence. It also provides free and compulsory education to all children from the age 6 to 14 years.
- (iii) **Right against Exploitation (Articles 23-24)** : The constitution prohibits human trafficking, child labour, and the forced labour.
- (iv) **Right to Freedom of Religion (Articles 25-28)** : The constitution provides freedom of conscience, freedom to manage religious affairs without paying any tax for religion. Right to Freedom of Religion means individuals have freedom to practice and manage their own affairs.
- (v) **Cultural and Educational Rights (Articles 29-30)** : The constitution state that all minorities, religious or linguistic, can set up their own educational institutions in order to preserve and develop their own culture.
- (vi) **Right to Constitutional Remedies (Article 32)** : The constitution allows citizens to move to the court if they believe that any of their fundamental rights have been violated by the state.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.

2

## The Parliamentary System of Government

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

**Ans.** 1. (ii) 2. (iii) 3. (i)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

**Ans.** 1. **Parliament** is the supreme representative authority of the people.

2. The Lok Sabha is normally elected for **five** years.
3. The **Speaker** presides over the meetings of the Lok Sabha.
4. An **Ordinary** bill can be introduced in either house.
5. The proposal for a law is called a **bill**.

**C. State whether the following statements are True or False :**

- Ans.**
- |          |           |          |
|----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. True  | 2. True   | 3. False |
| 4. False | 5. False. |          |

**D. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. For the purpose of elections the whole country is divided into constituencies. Each constituency consists of several lakhs of people. Every adult of 18 years of age or above has been given the right to vote.

Votes are cast on the basis of secret ballot which means nobody can judge in whose favour the voter has cast his vote.

2. **Qualification of the Members :** In order to seek election of the Lok Sabha a person must possess the following qualifications :

He should be a citizen of India.

He should be 25 years of age.

He should not be a proclaimed offender.

He should not be holding an office of profit under the government.

3. **Reasons For Choosing Parliamentary Form of Government**

The makers of our Constitution, after taking into account the historical background, the politico-economic set up of our country and the diverse social elements, chose the parliamentary form of democracy for a variety of reasons :

During the British rule, educated Indians observed the working of the British Parliamentary System. They approved of it and desired the same for Independent India.

- Secondly, the Parliamentary system is both responsible and responsive. The government is responsible and accountable to the people. There are fewer chances of the government becoming arbitrary. In the rare case that this does happen, then the ruling party might lose the support of the majority in the Parliament.
- The Parliament system leaves no scope for the

emergence of a dictator. The Head of the State possesses only nominal powers while the real power rests with the Council of Ministers, headed by the Prime Minister. The Council of Minister is collectively responsible to the legislature.

Thus, in the words of Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, the father of the Constitution of India'—the main strength of a parliamentary government lies in its ability to satisfy the essential test of democracy, a combination of stability and responsibility.

4. After the general elections are over and the Lok Sabha is duly constituted with a declaration by the Election Commission, the first thing for the Lok Sabha to do is to elect its Chairman and Vice-Chairman, popularly known as the Speaker and the Deputy Speaker respectively. The Deputy Speaker acts as the Speaker when the latter is not present.

**E. Long Answer Question :**

**Ans.**

1. The Parliament keeps a check on the ministers and their work. Members of the Parliament have the right to question the ministers about the working of their ministries. This is usually done during the Question Hour. During the zero Hour which starts immediately after the Question Hour, members can raise issues of public interest. If it is not satisfied with the functioning of the ministers, the Lok Sabha can pass a vote of no-confidence. This is passed to remove the government from power.
2. The main function of the Parliament is to frame laws, but it performs many other functions as well as. They are :

**Law-making Body**

It frames new laws, and amends or repeals them, if necessary, on all the 97 subjects of the Union List and all the Residuary subjects which have not found a place in any of the lists. In certain cases, it can enact laws on the subjects of the State List also. The Parliament along with the State Legislature can pass laws regarding the 47 subjects on the Concurrent List. In case of any clash, the law passed by the Parliament shall prevail. The Union Parliament has the sole right to amend the Constitution, although in certain cases, these amendments should be ratified by a majority of the

states. The states can, in no case, initiate an amendment to the Constitution.

### **Financial Control**

Parliament exercises control over the government's income acquired through taxes, and its expenditure for public services. The Parliament provides the ways and means to raise the revenue required and also ensures that the money that was granted has been spent for the authorized purposes. The government puts its annual financial every year. This shows the income of the government in detail and how it will be spent. The Parliament has to pass it. If it does not, the government resigns.

### **Judicial Functions**

The Parliament enjoys certain judicial powers also. It can impeach the President, a judge of the Supreme Court or the High Court, in case they are found violating the Constitution or misusing their status or indulging in corruption of any nature.

### **Electoral Function**

The Parliament plays an important role in the election of the President and the Vice-President.

### **Relationship Between the Two Houses :**

Theoretically speaking, the Lok Sabha and the Rajya Sabha enjoy equal powers. But we cannot overlook the fact that the Lok Sabha represents the people and is elected by the people. On the other hand, the Rajya Sabha represents the states of the Indian Union and its members are elected indirectly by the members of the State Legislative Assemblies. They never have to go the people. In such a situation, it is but natural that the Lok Sabha is given an upper hand in almost all matters concerning the Parliament.

The two houses of our Parliament, at times, do not share equal powers.

- A Money Bill can originate only in the Lok Sabha.
- The No Confidence Motion, when passed in the Lok Sabha, leads to the resignation of the entire Council of Ministers.

Project/Activity

**Ans.** Do yourself.



## Exercise

**A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :****Tick (3) the correct answer :****Ans.** 1. (iv) 2. (ii)**B. Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.**
1. We need a group of **people** to run the government.
  2. The **President** is the supreme commander of the armed forces.
  3. The term of the office of the vice-president is **five** years.
  4. **Cabinet** ministers are the care of the executive.
  5. The cabinet makes important **decision** and frames **policies**.

**C. State whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F):**

- Ans.**
1. False
  2. True
  3. True
  4. False
  5. True

**D. Write full forms of the following :**

- Ans.**
- (i) **IAS** : Indian Administrative Service (IAS).
  - (ii) **IFS** : Indian Foreign Service (IFS).
  - (iii) **IPS** : Indian Police Service (IPS).
  - (iv) **UPSC** : Union Public Service Commission (UPSC).

**E. Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. To become the President, a person should possess the following qualifications :
    - should be a citizen of India and above 35 years of age
    - should not hold any office of profit under the government
    - should not be pronounced a bankrupt
    - should not be pronounced an offender under the laws of the land.

**Election** : An Electoral College elects the President of India. It consists of :

- The elected members of both the Houses of Parliament.
- The elected members of State Legislative Assemblies.
- The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of the Union Territories of Delhi and Pondicherry.

- A President is eligible for re-election to the office after completing the term in office.
2. An emergency can be imposed in case of external aggression or armed rebellion, if the government of a state breaks down; if there is a threat to the financial stability of the country.
  3. The Vice President of India is the chairman of the Rajya Sabha. He works as the president in his absence.
  4. The Prime Minister and his council of ministers work as a team on the principle of collective responsibility. They are jointly responsible to the parliament for any decision taken by them.
  5. Civil servants are government servants who are not connected with any political party. They are supposed to implement policies of the government in an impartial manner. They are members of the Indian Administrative Service (IAS), Indian Foreign Service (IFS) and Indian Police Service (IPS) etc. Selection for these services is usually made by the Union Public Service Commission (UPSC) through competitive examination and interviews. Successful candidates receive special training. They are then appointed to work at both Central and State levels.

## **F. Long Answer Questions :**

### **Ans. 1. Power of the President**

The President possesses administrative, military, diplomatic, legislative, financial, judicial and emergency powers.

**Administrative Power :** The President has the power to select the Prime Minister, but the election is restricted to the leader of the party in majority in the House of the people or a person who is in a position to win the Prime Minister. Ministers have to inform the President about all important decisions they make. All top-level officials of the Union Government are appointed by the President and can be removed by him. He appoints the judges of the Supreme Court and High Courts. He also controls the administration of the Union Territories directly.

**Military Power :** He is the Supreme Commander of the armed forces in the country. He can declare war or conclude

peace.

**Diplomatic Powers :** The President of India represents India in international forums and sends and receives ambassadors. All the international treaties and agreements are concluded in his name.

**Legislative Powers :** He can summon or discontinue the Houses of Parliament. He has the power to dissolve the Lok Sabha. He can address either House or both Houses of Parliament together. He addresses a joint sitting of both Houses of Parliament at the beginning of the first session after each general election to the Lok Sabha, and at the beginning of the first session of each year. The President can also issue Ordinances, which have the force of law when the Parliament is not in session.

**Financial Powers :** Our President has been given vast financial powers also. He causes the annual budget and the supplementary budget to be laid before the Parliament. No Money Bill can be introduced in the Parliament without his prior assent. He can sanction money from the contingency fund.

**Judicial Powers :** The President has been given a number of powers in the judicial sphere also. He is not answerable before any Court of Law for the discharge of his duties. He has the powers to grant pardons, to remit or suspend a sentence of punishment on any appeal for mercy. He can commute even death sentence to imprisonment for life or otherwise.

**Emergency Powers :** The President had certain extraordinary powers to deal with emergency situations. He can impose emergency—in case of external aggression or armed rebellion; if the government machinery of a State breaks down; if there is a threat to the financial stability of the country. Under these circumstances the President can take over the rule of the State. This is called Presidents Rule. During the Indo-China War in 1962, a national emergency was declared as the security of India was threatened by external aggression.

2. The Prime Minister is the head of the Council of Ministers. The whole body works together under this person as a team.

They hold 'Collective Responsibility'. This means that all of them together are answerable to the Parliament for any decision taken by the Prime Minister. If a vote of no-confidence is passed against the Prime Minister, they all have to resign. Cabinet Ministers hold charge of different portfolios or departments of the Central Government like finance, defence, etc. A Minister of State can also hold independent charge of a department.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

4

The Judiciary

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answer :

Ans. 1. (iv)                      2. (i)                      3. (iv)                      4. (iii)

#### B. State whether the following statements are True or False :

Ans. 1. False      2. True      3. False      4. True      5. False  
6. False      7. True      8. False      9. False.

#### C. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. The Indian judicial system is a **pyramidal structure** system.  
2. The **Supreme** is the highest court in India.  
3. The judges of the Supreme Court hold office till the age of **65**.  
4. The Supreme Court has one **Chief Justice** and **25** other judges.  
5. The Magistrates also deals with **criminal** cases.

#### D. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans. 1. The courts helps to ensure justice by giving punishment to the guilty. If there have been no courts, people would take law and order into their own hands leading to chaos. Courts settle disputes, which arise among citizens and also between citizen and state.  
2. The three levels of judiciary in India :  
(i) Supreme Court                      (ii) High Court

- (iii) Subordinate Courts.
3. The Supreme Court is the highest court of justice in the country. It has the power to supervise and control the entire Judicial system in India so it is called the guardians of the Constitution.
  4. In the recent years, for providing fast and affordable justice to the poor and underprivileged sections, Lok Adalts have been introduced. These courts provide justice quickly by resolving cases that have been pending in the courts.
  5. The First Information Report (FIR) is a very important document which sets off investigation of a case into motion.
  6. **Judicial Review**  
The Supreme Court has the power to examine or review laws passed by the legislature or order issued by the executive and check whether they are in accordance with the Constitution. If the order or law is in violation of the Constitution, the Supreme Court can declare them null or void.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

- Ans.**
1. **Appellate Jurisdiction :** It refers to the power of supreme court to hear and decide appeals against the judgement of High Courts or any other court. Appeals can be made to the Supreme Court in three types of cases :
    - (i) **Constitutional cases :** An appeal can be made against any judgement of a High Court, if the High Court certifies that the matter needs interpretation of the Constitution.
    - (ii) **Criminal cases :** In criminal cases related to kidnapping, theft, forgery, bribery, murder and other acts, there can be an appeal to the Supreme Court. If the Sessions Court has acquitted an accused person and the High Court reverses that order and sentences her/against that judgement in the Supreme Court.  
An appeal can also be made to the Supreme Court if a High Court withdraws a case from a lower court to itself and gives a death sentence to the accused.
    - (iii) **Civil cases :** There can be an appeal against civil cases if the High Court certifies that the case is fit for appeal to the Supreme Court.

### **Advisory Functions**

The President can seek the advice of the Supreme Court regarding any question of a law or a matter of public importance. However, such an advice is not binding on the President.

### **Writ Jurisdiction**

Any individual who feels that his/her fundamental rights have been violated can go to the Supreme Court for redressal. The Supreme Court can give special orders in the form of Writs.

### **Court of Record**

The Supreme Court is the Court of Record. All decisions and proceedings are recorded and printed. The lower courts in similar cases can refer to these decisions.

### **Judicial Review**

The Supreme Court has the power to examine or review laws passed by the legislature or order issued by the executive and check whether they are in accordance with the Constitution. If the order or law is in violation of the Constitution, the Supreme Court can declare them null or void.

## **2. Lok Adalats and Public Interest Litigation**

In the recent years, for providing fast and affordable justice to the poor and underprivileged sections, Lok Adalats have been introduced. These courts provide justice quickly by resolving cases that have been pending in the courts. The first Lok Adalat met in Delhi in 1985 and solved 150 cases related to payment of compensation to the relatives of the victims of an accident in a single day.

PIL or Public Interest Litigation is filed by an individual or a group of people in the Supreme Court or High Court. PILs are filed when public interests are undermined by any governmental action. The court admits PILs only when it is satisfied that these cases are for public good.

## **3. High Courts**

The Constitution provides that each state will have a High Court. But the Parliament has been given the power to put two or more states under one High Court, e.g. the seven

north-easter states, Arunachal Pradesh, Assam, Meghalaya, Nagaland, Mizoram, Manipur and Tripura have one High Court at Guwahati. Some states like Uttar Pradesh has a High Court at Allahabad and a bench at Lucknow (bench means one more court). Rajasthan has a seat of High Court at Jodhpur and a bench at Jaipur. It depends on territorial extent and population of the state.

The union territories are affiliated to the High Court of the states nearest to them, e.g., Andaman and Nicobar islands is affiliated to the Calcutta High Court, with the circuit bench at Port Blair.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

5

## Social Justice for Marginalisation

### Exercise

#### A. Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :

Tick (3) the correct answers :

Ans. 1. (iv)                      2. (iii)                      3. (iii)

#### B. Fill in the blanks :

- Ans. 1. **Marginalisation** is the social process of becoming or being made marginal.
2. The constitution of India does not define **scheduled caste**.
3. People believe that **Adivasis** are exotic, primitive and backward.
4. Right to freedom of religion guarantees all citizens the right to **practice preach** and **follow** any religion of their choice.

#### C. State whether the following statements are True or False :

- Ans. 1. False                      2. True                      3. True
4. False                      5. True

#### D. Short Answer Questions :

- Ans. 1. Untouchability is a very severe form of social injustice. The Indian Constitution abolishes the practice of untouchability in all forms.
2. Manual scavenging refers to the practice of removing human and animal waste using brooms, tin plates and baskets from any latrines and carrying it once the head to

disposal grounds some distance away.

3. The British adopted a ruthless policy towards the Adivasis who they first came in contact with them. Adivasis were forcibly uprooted and evicted from their lands by the British. They lost their right to the forests. No one could enter these reserved forests without permit and entry-free.

**E. Long Answer Questions :**

**Ans.**

1. The Preamble of our Constitution mentions social justice as one of the ideas that the Constitution upholds. Social justice is achieved when all kinds of inequalities in the society are abolished. To attain social justice, the Indian Constitution has made several provisions. Some of these provisions are :
  - Article 15 of the India Constitution mentions that every citizen should be treated equally without any discrimination. At the same time, it also gives the State the right to make special provisions for the upliftment of the marginalised sections of the society.
  - Article 17 of the Indian Constitution abolishes the practice of untouchability in any form and also makes it a punishable offence.
  - Article 46 of the Directive Principles of the State Policy mentions that it is the duty of the State to protect the society from social injustice and all forms of exploitation.
  - Article 338 and 338A mentions that there shall be a National Commission for the Scheduled Castes and Scheduled Tribes, which would ensure that the constitutional provisions for safeguarding the interests of the weaker sections are fulfilled :
  - Article 275 makes provision for the Centre to provide financial grants to States to enable them to undertake special programmes for the welfare of the Scheduled Tribes.
  - Special provisions have been laid down in Article 244 and Fifth and Sixth Schedules for the administration of areas inhabited by the Scheduled Tribes.

Article 164 mentions that the States of Bihar, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa will have a Minister in-charge of the welfare of SCs, STs and Other Backward Classes.



2. **Implementation of the Provisions for the OBC**

Relaxation in the upper age limit for direct recruitment, by three years, to the OBCs.

- An intensive time bound programme for adult education, vocational training and separate hostels or OBCs.
- They have been given relaxation in qualifying marks in written examinations and in interviews.
- The candidate has the opportunity to clear the civil service examination seven attempts.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

6

Public Facilities

Exercise

A. **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) :**

Tick (3) the correct answers :

Ans. 1. (iv) 2. (iv)

B. **Fill in the blanks :**

- Ans.
1. **Big** city faces shortage of water supply.
  2. **Constitution of India** provides right to life.
  3. **Government** shares the responsibility of public facility with **private** companies.

C. **State whether the following statements are True or False :**

Ans. 1. True 2. False 3. True

D. **Short Answer Questions :**

- Ans.
1. Government provides people with essential facilities. These facilities are called public facilities, and include supply of water, electricity, hospital, health, hygiene etc.
  2. The Government. 3. Yes.

E. **Long Answer Questions :**

1. (i) Yes.
2. (e) Public facilities relate to basic needs like water, health, education, electricity, etc., as part of Right to life.

Project/Activity

Ans. Do yourself.

